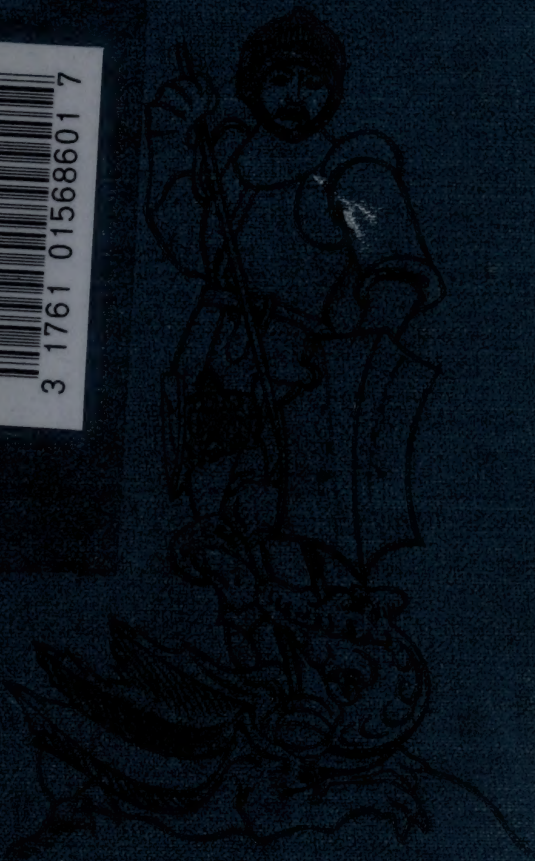


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

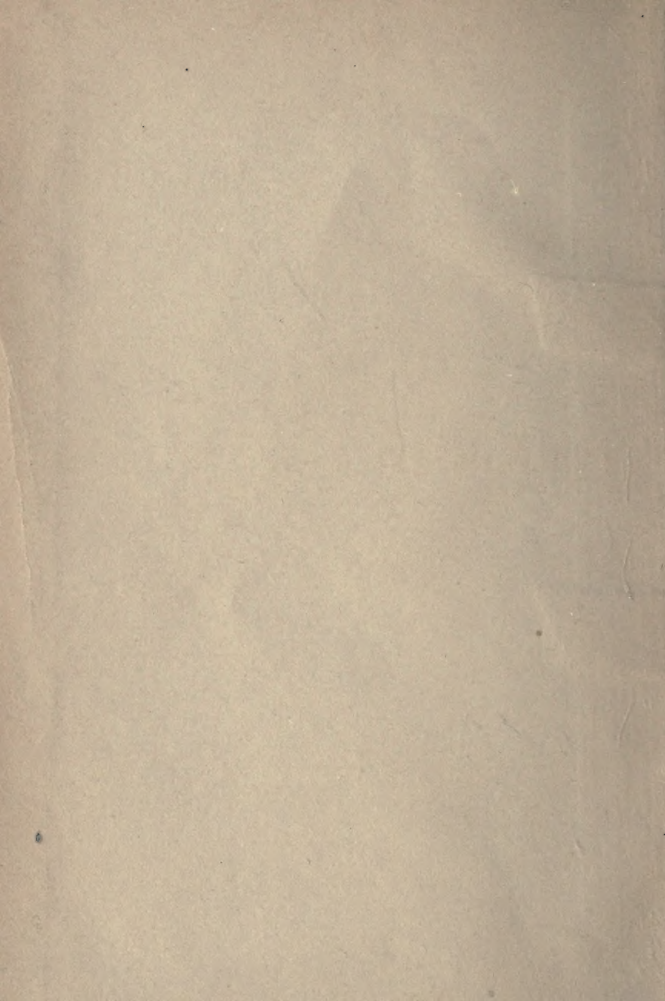


3 1761 01568601 7



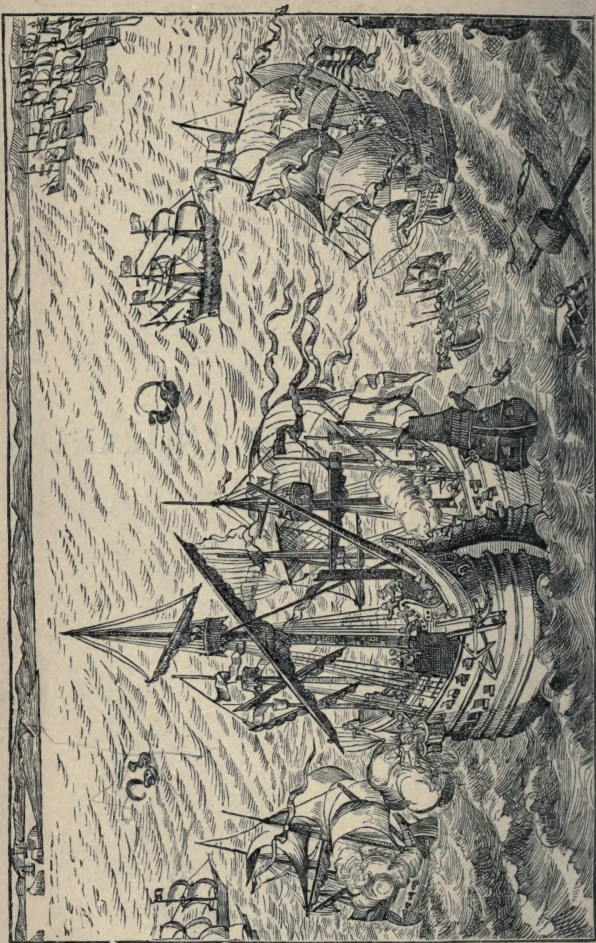








FIRST HISTORY OF ENGLAND



DEFEAT OF THE SPANISH ARMADA.

A FIRST HISTORY

OF

ENGLAND

BY

LOUISE CREIGHTON

AUTHOR OF "A FIRST HISTORY OF FRANCE," "LIFE OF THE  
"BLACK PRINCE," "SIR WALTER RALEGH," ETC.

With numerous Illustrations

NINTH IMPRESSION


50537  
25/8/01

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

NEW YORK AND BOMBAY

1901



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

# CONTENTS.

CHAP.	PAGE
Introduction . . . . .	I
I. The Roman Rule in Britain . . . . .	7
II. The Coming of the English . . . . .	17
III. England becomes one Kingdom . . . . .	34
IV. The Danish Conquest . . . . .	45
V. The Norman Conquest . . . . .	54
VI. The Norman Kings . . . . .	64
VII. The Angevin Kings . . . . .	83
VIII. The Barons against the King . . . . .	100
IX. The Scottish Wars . . . . .	113
X. Early Years of Edward III. . . . .	122
XI. The French Wars . . . . .	126
XII. The Loss of France . . . . .	151
XIII. The Wars of the Roses . . . . .	161
XIV. The Tudor Monarchy . . . . .	176
XV. The Reformation . . . . .	193
XVI. The Struggles with Spain . . . . .	213
XVII. The Quarrel between King and Parliament . . . . .	242
XVIII. The Great Rebellion . . . . .	257
XIX. The Restoration . . . . .	270
XX. The Revolution . . . . .	285
XXI. The War of the Spanish Succession . . . . .	302
XXII. England and her Colonies . . . . .	322
XXIII. England and Napoleon . . . . .	340
XXIV. Modern England . . . . .	365



# CONTENTS

1. Introduction	1
2. The Development of the Theory	2
3. The Generalization of the Theory	3
4. The Application of the Theory	4
5. The Conclusion	5
6. The Appendix	6
7. The Bibliography	7
8. The Index	8
9. The Glossary	9
10. The List of Figures	10
11. The List of Tables	11
12. The List of Equations	12
13. The List of Symbols	13
14. The List of Abbreviations	14
15. The List of References	15
16. The List of Acknowledgments	16
17. The List of Contributors	17
18. The List of Reviewers	18
19. The List of Editors	19
20. The List of Publishers	20
21. The List of Distributors	21
22. The List of Subscribers	22
23. The List of Advertisers	23
24. The List of Contributors	24
25. The List of Reviewers	25
26. The List of Editors	26
27. The List of Publishers	27
28. The List of Distributors	28
29. The List of Subscribers	29
30. The List of Advertisers	30

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Defeat of the Spanish Armada . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Roman Wall as it stands now . . . . .	11
Harold embarks on Board Ship ( <i>Bayeux Tapestry</i> ) . . . . .	52
William sails for England ( <i>Bayeux Tapestry</i> ) . . . . .	55
Battle of Hastings ( <i>Bayeux Tapestry</i> ) . . . . .	58
William's Heralds ( <i>Bayeux Tapestry</i> ) . . . . .	61
Going for Milk ( <i>Loutrell Psalter</i> ) . . . . .	81
The Murder of Thomas Becket ( <i>from an old Psalter, Harleian, in the British Museum</i> ) . . . . .	89
Knight Templar ( <i>from a Tomb</i> ) . . . . .	93
Sowing Seed ( <i>Loutrell Psalter</i> ) . . . . .	99
Picture of a Mill ( <i>Loutrell Psalter</i> ) . . . . .	107
Effigy of Robert of Normandy . . . . .	112
Tomb of a Crusader, John of Eltham, Son of Edward II., from Westminster Abbey, A.D. 1334 . . . . .	121
Trefoil Pediment with an armed Knight and Horse, from the Tomb of Aylmer de Valence in Westminster Abbey . . . . .	125
Shooting at the Butts ( <i>Loutrell Psalter</i> ) . . . . .	128
Crossbowmen and Artillery in Fourteenth Century . . . . .	130
Noblemen's Costumes in Fourteenth Century . . . . .	135
Joan Darc . . . . .	158
Henry VIII. ( <i>after Holbein</i> ) . . . . .	177
A Nobleman in the Reign of Henry VIII. . . . .	186
Henry VIII. gives the Bible to Archbishop Cranmer and Lord Cromwell ( <i>from Cranmer's Bible in the British Museum</i> ) . . . . .	195
Queen Elizabeth . . . . .	209
Mary, Queen of Scots . . . . .	216

	PAGE
Royal Procession of Queen Elizabeth and her Courtiers .	228
Ancient Wooden Houses in London, in one of which Sir R. Whittington is supposed to have lived . . . . .	230
Tomb of Sir Francis de Vere in Westminster Abbey .	235
Charles I. . . . .	245
Whitehall in the reign of James . . . . .	255
Pikeman about 1630 . . . . .	259
Children of Charles I. ( <i>after Vanádyck</i> ) . . . . .	264
Oliver Cromwell . . . . .	267
Old London Bridge, 1640 . . . . .	272
Tower of London . . . . .	283
John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough . . . . .	304
Rock of Gibraltar . . . . .	310
Citadel and Town of Quebec, from the opposite side of the St. Lawrence River . . . . .	328
Vice-Admiral Horatio, Lord Nelson ( <i>from a Painting by Abbott</i> ) . . . . .	345
Man-of-war in the time of Nelson, "The Victory" .	351
The Duke of Wellington . . . . .	358
Sebastopol . . . . .	379

\* \* *These Illustrations, from authentic sources, are by*

M. C. VVYAN.

## INTRODUCTION.

THIS little book is called the History of England, which means that it will tell you about the people who lived in this land before you, and about the things they did which have made England what it is now.

Before I begin to tell you how England came to be what it is now, I want you to stop and think what sort of a place it is. You know that it is a country covered with corn-fields and meadows, with many beautiful houses and gardens, and a great many large towns. There are good roads which lead from one house to another, and railways go between the different towns, so that the trains very quickly take us from one end of England to the other. At the towns on the seaside are ships which will take us to any part of the world and bring us the things that we want from other lands, such as sugar and tea and coffee, and far more things than I could tell you about, and they carry away to other lands the things we make in England. Perhaps too you may have heard people say that every one is free in England. That means that every one can do as he likes if only he does not hurt any one else ; and the laws are made to keep one man

from harming another. The laws tell us what it is for the good of all that all should do. Sometimes the laws have to be added to or changed, and to do this a number of men are chosen from the different parts of the land, and they meet together in Parliament and decide what it is best to do for the country. All Englishmen except the very poor can be chosen to sit in Parliament, and may help to choose the men who are to sit there. Then a few men are chosen out of Parliament to be the ministers, because they are the men whom most of the Parliament think the wisest and most trustworthy. The ministers have to take care that everything is done rightly, and if they do not do it well, others are chosen to take their place. At the head of all is the Queen; she is not chosen like the ministers or the Parliament, she is Queen because her forefathers have been kings and queens in England before her, and her son will be king after her. She has to obey the laws like every one else, and can only do those things which the laws allow her to do; but the ministers talk over with her the things that they are going to do, and every one looks up to her as the first lady in the land, and respects her because she has shown that she is wise and good, and cares for the people.

This is the sort of land that England is. Scotland and Ireland are one with England, and all three together are called Great Britain. There are many other lands far away which belong to England too, India and Australia and Canada and many more, where Englishmen have gone and lived and shown themselves so



strong that they have either driven out the people who lived there before or have made them do as they bid them. These distant lands are called England's colonies, and they help to make England rich and strong.

England is in the part of the world called Europe, and there are several other great countries in Europe, such as Germany and France and Russia and Italy and Spain, where the people live very much as we do in England, though they do not have a Parliament just like ours, and they do not speak like us, but each nation speaks its own language. England is very good friends with all these lands, and people go about a great deal from one land in Europe to another, for there are roads and railways and steamers everywhere.

This is how things are now. I will tell you how things were when we first begin to know anything about England more than nineteen hundred years ago. Europe was very different then. Most of the people who lived in it were wild, and only cared for hunting and fighting. In the south of Europe only it was different. In Greece there had lived men who knew almost as much as, and in some things a great deal more than, the wisest men do now. The Greeks carved the most beautiful statues, built the most beautiful temples, and wrote some of the most beautiful poetry and some of the wisest books that have ever been known in the world. Their ships sailed to all the other countries round the great southern sea called the Mediterranean Sea, and wherever they went they taught the people what they knew. But in Italy there was

a people, the Romans, who grew to be stronger than the Greeks. First they only had one town called Rome and the country round it, but little by little they gained other lands, for they knew how to fight well and could make wise laws. In all the lands which they gained they made roads and built cities, and taught the people to live in their cities, and to plough the land and grow corn, and live quiet settled lives instead of wandering about in a wild way. The Romans went on bringing one people after another under their rule. At last one of their great leaders, who was called Caius Julius Cæsar, came with his soldiers as far as England, or Britain as it was called then, and that is how we know what our land was like nineteen hundred years ago. There were no cities then, and the land was covered with great forests and wide swamps. The Britons who lived in it dwelt in huts half buried in the ground, without windows or chimneys. They spent most of their time in hunting and fighting. They had no laws and no king, but each large family or tribe had a king of its own, and they fought a great deal with one another. In the southern parts of the island the Britons learned a good deal from their neighbours the Gauls, who lived in the country which we now call France, and they began to till the land and grow corn. In the north they had flocks of cows and sheep, but they had not learned to till the land. So it was a wild country that Cæsar found when he came to Britain fifty-five years before the birth of Christ. When his ships came to the shore there were many Britons stand-

ing there who did not mean to let these strange men land. The Britons looked very fierce, they were tall and had long streaming hair, and when they fought they threw off their clothes, and had their bodies painted very strangely with blue paint. The Roman soldiers were frightened when they saw them, but at last one of them leaped on shore and then the others followed, and as they knew how to fight much better than the Britons, and had better swords, they soon killed them and drove them away. Cæsar only stayed a little while in Britain, for winter was coming on. He came back next year, because he wanted to see what sort of a land it was, and because he wanted to punish the Britons for coming over the sea to help his enemies in Gaul.

The Romans thought Britain a very miserable land; there was nothing to be got there; the thick woods and the swamps made it difficult to get about the country; it was cold and wet, and the people were very fierce. So the Romans were very glad to leave such a disagreeable land, and after they had well frightened the Britons, they sailed away and left them to go on fighting amongst themselves in their wild woods and swamps. In this little book I want to tell you some of the things which made such a change in the land and in the people that live in it, and which have made that wild land of Britain turn into the England that we know.

There is one thing that has made a very great change. The Britons did not know the true God. They used to pray to strange gods who they thought

lived in dark woods, and were pleased by having men put to death in their honour. The Romans when Julius Cæsar was alive did not know anything about the true God either. The only people who knew Him were the Jews, who lived in the little land of Palestine, far away in the eastern part of the Mediterranean Sea. The Romans had sent their soldiers to take the land of the Jews and make it part of the Roman Empire, as they called all the lands which they had forced to obey their laws. But the Romans thought very little of the Jews, and they did not learn anything about their God. When Jesus Christ was born, not many years after the death of Julius Cæsar, at first neither the Jews nor the Romans would listen to His teaching, and the Roman judge Pontius Pilate allowed the Jews to crucify Him, and the Roman soldiers helped to mock Him before He died.

## CHAPTER I.

### *THE ROMAN RULE IN BRITAIN.*

**The Romans conquer Britain, A.D. 43-78.**

—The Romans did not forget Britain, though for some time they were too busy with other things to come back to it. But as they were fond of fighting, and liked always to add new lands to their empire, they would not be content till Britain was a Roman *province*, for so they called all the different parts of their empire. Cæsar had made France, or Gaul as it was then called, a Roman province, and the Britons used sometimes to go over to Gaul in boats and take the things they made or found in their country and give them to the Gauls in exchange for swords and other things the Romans had taught the Gauls to make. The Britons saw that the Gauls used Roman money, and so they began to try and copy it and make money for themselves, for before they had only had metal rings. The Romans often heard tell of the Britons coming to Gaul, and this helped to make them not forget them. At last, about a hundred years after Cæsar had been in Britain, another Roman army came. The Britons were not at all pleased to see the Romans come and they



fought very hard against them. The Romans won many battles, and at last they cut down some of the woods in which the Britons thought their gods lived, because they wished to show the Britons that their gods could not really help them. In time the Britons learned that it was no good fighting against the Romans any more, and they settled down quietly to do as the Romans told them.

One of the Briton kings who was called Caractacus was taken as a prisoner to Rome, and when he saw all the great buildings in that splendid city he said to the Roman emperor, "How is it that you who dwell in such grand palaces envy us poor Britons our thatched cots?" Certainly the Romans could not hope to get much out of Britain, and most likely they only wanted to conquer it, and give their soldiers something to do, and to gain new glory, so that men might say that the Romans ruled every known land.

**Boadicea fights against the Romans, A.D. 59-62.**—Sometimes the Romans were very cruel to the Britons. There was a queen called Boadicea, whose husband had been a very good friend to the Romans, but when he died the Romans took away Boadicea's lands, and when she complained they scourged her. Then Boadicea was filled with hatred of the Romans, and she called round her all the other Britons whom the Romans had treated badly, and they formed a great army. Boadicea led them against some of the towns that the Romans had built, and they burned them and killed all the folk in them, and the Romans

were very frightened and fled before Boadicea. But at last the chief Roman general in the land, who was called Suetonius, gathered an army and came against Boadicea, and they fought a great battle. Boadicea was in the midst of her Britons with her daughters in a war chariot. She wore a gold collar round her neck, and her long yellow hair covered her shoulders; over it she wore a helmet, and in her hand she carried a spear. She spoke brave words to the Britons and bade them fight well for her sake and their own. They heeded her words and it was a fierce battle; but the Romans were too strong for the Britons. The Britons would not fly, and fought till there was not a man left; they would rather die fighting bravely than live the life of slaves. Boadicea took poison that she might die too rather than become a prisoner of the hated Romans.

After this there was peace between the Britons and the Romans. A wise Roman called Caius Julius Agricola came to rule in the land, and taught the Britons many things. He built many small castles, called forts, in the north of England, and put soldiers in them to keep out the wild Scottish folk, who used to come down from their hills and kill all whom they could find, and carry away the cattle and waste the land. Agricola treated the Britons kindly, and this made them willing to do as he bade them and to leave off fighting against the Romans.

How the Romans ruled in Britain, A.D. 85-409.—After a time many of the Britons learned to speak the Latin language which the Romans spoke;

they dressed too like the Romans, and liked to be called Romans themselves. A great change came over Britain. The Romans were the best builders and the best road-makers that have ever been. They built cities with walls round them all over England. Their chief city was York, and London too began to be an important place, for merchants used to come there to offer their goods for sale. Then they made splendid roads from one part of the country to another, and many of our great roads now were first made by the Romans. They built bridges too, and country houses for the rich men, and theatres and public baths for the amusement and health of the people. They knew how to build so strongly that many parts of their buildings have stood till now. In many parts of the country we can still see traces where the Romans made camps for their soldiers with walls built round them to keep the enemy from attacking them unawares.

The greatest of all the works of the Romans was a mighty stone wall which they built across Britain from Newcastle to Carlisle to keep out the savage Scottish tribes. There were forts all along this wall, and it was so strong that many parts of it have lasted till this day.

The Romans taught the Britons how to dig iron and lead and tin out of the earth, and how to make swords and spears and knives and other things, and how to mould clay and bake it into pots of many shapes. The Britons too tilled the land and grew a great deal of corn. Much of their corn and the things that they

made, and the horses and dogs which were bred in their land, were taken to other parts of the Roman Empire by the merchants who came to London.

But though the Britons learned much from the Romans, still they did not grow quite like the Romans. They still spoke their own language, which was called Welsh ; only the rich Britons and those who lived in the



ROMAN WALL, AS IT STANDS NOW.

towns learned the Latin language. The Romans stayed in Britain nearly four hundred years, and during this time a great change came over the Roman Empire, for the Romans at last learned to know the true God.

How the Gospel was spread over the world.—Jesus Christ was born about fifty years after Julius Cæsar came to Britain. The Romans did not hear much about Jesus whilst He lived, but after He

had gone back again to heaven the Apostles went to preach the Gospel in all lands. St. Paul himself went to Rome and died there a prisoner. Many people learned to be Christians, but they were mostly very humble folk at first. The Roman emperors did not like men to be Christians, and some of them were very cruel to the Christians and used to put them in prison and torment them cruelly and kill them. But the Christians did not fear death, for they remembered how their Lord Jesus had died for them. They went on meeting together to pray to God even though they had to do it in churches dug out in the earth so that the Roman rulers might not find them. They sent teachers into all lands to tell all men about Jesus, and some of these teachers came to Britain and many of the Britons became Christians.

**St. Albanus the Martyr.**—In Britain too the Christians were sometimes treated very cruelly. There was a Roman soldier named Albanus who, though not a Christian himself, was sorry for the way in which he saw the Christians treated, and he hid one of them in his house. When Albanus saw how holy this Christian teacher was, and how he prayed to God, his heart was touched and he learned from the holy man and became a Christian too. But the Roman ruler heard that there was a Christian teacher hidden in Albanus' house and he sent his soldiers to fetch him. When the soldiers came to the house Albanus himself came out and bade them take him before the ruler. When the ruler spoke to him angrily Albanus said boldly that he had learned

/



to know the true God and would worship Him only. Then the ruler bade the soldiers scourge him cruelly, but Albanus bore the stripes gladly, for he thought how Roman soldiers had scourged Jesus. But the ruler only grew more angry, and he bade them take Albanus and cut off his head. They led him out to a little hill covered with flowers, and many people came together to see him, and there he died calling upon the name of God, and all the people wondered at his courage and his holiness. In after days men counted him a saint, and a great church was built on the spot where he died and was called after his name, and men honoured the church and made it very beautiful; a town grew up round it, and town and church still keep the name St. Albans to this day.

At last one of the Roman emperors called Constantine became a Christian himself, and after that the Christians, were no more tormented and put to death. Soon all the people in the Roman Empire became Christians, and churches were built everywhere. In Britain too many churches were built, and the Britons were very earnest Christians, and believed in God with all their hearts. After the Romans became Christians they began to mark the time according to the number of years which had passed since the birth of Christ, and we do so still.

The German peoples make war on the Roman Empire.—The Romans ruled in Britain for about three hundred and fifty years; but about four hundred years after the birth of Christ, the

Roman soldiers who were in Britain were sent for by the Roman emperor, who wanted them to help him to fight against his enemies. These enemies of Rome were the German peoples, whom the Romans called barbarians, as they called all the people who were not Romans. The Germans were a very brave and warlike people. They came in great hosts into the Roman Empire and drove away the cattle and burned the cities. Sometimes they settled down in the lands they had conquered, and the Romans could not keep them out. They mixed with the Romans and learned their language and learned to be Christians, but they had kings of their own and did not obey the Roman emperor. These German peoples had different names. Some of them who were called the Franks settled in Gaul and made it France. After a time there was no longer an emperor in Rome at all. Then the chief man in Rome was the Pope or Bishop of Rome, and he was soon looked upon as the head of the Church in all Europe. In the lands of the Roman Empire the different peoples whom we now know in Europe began to settle. But all these peoples learned much from Rome, and those who settled in the countries we call France, Italy, and Spain, took their language from the Latin language and are called the Romance peoples.

**Our German forefathers.**—We belong to the German peoples. Whilst the Romans were ruling in our land, our forefathers, the English, were living in the northern part of Germany round the mouth of the river Elbe. They were called Angles and Saxons then, and the name English is the same as the

name Angle. They were a free folk, who had never been conquered by the Romans, and, like English people ever since, cared more for their freedom than for anything else. They were a very brave people and fond of fighting, but they cared for other things as well. They tilled the ground and grew corn, and had a great many cattle and were clever fishers. They knew how to build good boats, and could make arms of bronze and iron, and were good carpenters. The women too were clever with their needle and could embroider beautifully and make fine linen. The women were treated very kindly, and the men paid them great honour, and let them order the houses as they liked. Our forefathers did not care to live in cities; they lived on their farms, and several farms together made a village. They had no kings; in each village the men used to meet together to settle their affairs, and if any man had done wrong they listened to what was to be said against him and decided how he was to be punished, for they were just and wished all people to do right.

Sometimes there were great meetings of all the chief men from each village, and there they would talk about the business of the whole people. When they made war they chose their bravest men to lead them, and when they gained lands from their enemies they used to divide them, so that each of the free men had his share, for there was no king to take all the new land for his own.

They were a merry folk, and liked all kinds of games in which the men could show their strength and their

cleverness. They used to meet together in a great hall which they built in the middle of their village, and the men would sit and feast whilst the women carried round the bowls of ale and gleemen sang songs to them about the deeds that their brave men had done.

Our forefathers did not know anything about the true God ; they prayed to a great many strange gods, chiefly to one whom they called Woden, the god of war.

They were clever sailors. They did not care to stay at home quietly, but liked to go away to seek adventures. Sometimes they went to catch whales. Sometimes they travelled in their flat-bottomed boats rowed by fifty men to seek new lands and bring home plunder. In some of their wanderings they came to Britain, and the land pleased them, for it was much richer and more fertile than their own home.

## CHAPTER II.

### *THE COMING OF THE ENGLISH.*

**The English come to Britain, A.D. 450.**  
—The Britons were in a very miserable state after the Romans left them. Their old enemies the wild Scottish tribes came down again into Britain to kill and steal and burn; and there were no Roman soldiers to defend the great wall and to fight against them. The Britons fought on as well as they could for forty years until they began to despair. They had seen what good fighters the English were when they had come to plunder their shores; so they sent to ask some of them to come and fight for them, and promised them lands and money in return for their help.

A band of English came to Britain led by two chiefs, Hengist and Horsa. They landed at the mouth of the Thames and soon drove the Scots out of Britain; but the Britons did not have peace for all that. The English liked their new land, and more and more of them came over in their boats to find a home in Britain. The Britons did not like this, for the English took away their land and their cattle; so the Britons fought against the English, but the English were stronger than

they. The Britons could not fight as well now as they had done when the Romans first came to Britain; for the Romans had taught them to live quietly in their homes and to like comfort. They did not know how to come together and make big armies which might have kept out the English.

For about a hundred and fifty years always more and more English kept on coming; and as the Britons would not make friends with them, and were not strong enough to keep them out, they had to flee from their homes. A great many of them were killed, others died from sickness and want of food. It took the English some time to drive the Britons out of the cities, for they were not used to fight against cities. Most of the Britons who were not killed fled farther and farther away to the west, where they found safe hiding-places in the hills of Wales and Cornwall, where the English did not care to follow them.

All the rest of the land fell into the hands of the English. The grand buildings which the Romans had made were all ruined, for the English did not care to live in cities. The cities stood empty and half burned down, and the land was covered with the ruins of the fine country houses in which the rich men had lived, and of the empty churches in which no one now prayed to God, for the English were heathens. Men only went on living in a few of the biggest cities, such as York and London. The English did not care to take the religion of the people they had conquered; they brought their own wives with them, and learned from the Britons



nothing of all that the Romans had taught them. They spoke their own language, and the language of the Romans was no longer spoken in the land. That is why we speak a German language and not a Romance language like the French. Perhaps a few British women were kept as slaves, but they were too despised and feeble to teach the English anything.

**The English kingdoms.**—The people whom I have called English was made up of several different peoples called Angles and Saxons and Jutes, and other names besides. But they were all kinsfolk ; they came from the same part of Germany, they lived in the same sort of way, prayed to the same gods, and spoke the same language. In time they all came to be called the English, and the land in which they lived was called England.

Before they left Germany only some of the English had kings ; but in the new land they felt the need of kings. They chose the men who had led them in battle against the Britons, and who had helped them to gain their new lands, to be their kings. As the English had come at different times and under different leaders, there were many kingdoms in England. After a time, when the English had settled down, seven kingdoms were set up. Each of the seven kings wished to be the greatest and to rule over the others. So they often fought together, and sometimes one was stronger and sometimes another.

**How the English became Christians.**—The English were still very fierce and cruel, and after they

had fought together they would sometimes sell to be slaves the prisoners they had taken. Some of these slaves, fair-haired boys and girls, were sent as far as Rome to be sold. As they were standing in the market-place a good priest called Gregory passed by. He liked their fair faces, and stopped to ask who they were. When he heard that they were heathens he felt sad, and he asked what was their nation ; he was told they were Angles. “Angles,” he said ; “ah, they have the faces of angels, and they ought to be made like the angels in heaven.” Some time after this Gregory was chosen to be Pope or Bishop of Rome. When Gregory was Pope he did not forget the fair-haired Angles he had seen, nor his wish to make them angels. He sent a holy man called Augustine with several other monks to England to teach the English to be Christians. The monks were men who had vowed to give their lives to God, and not to marry or care for any earthly joy.

Augustine comes to England, A.D. 597.  
—Augustine and his monks landed in England on a little island at the mouth of the Thames one hundred and fifty years after Hengist and Horsa had landed there with the first English. That part of England was called Kent, and there was at that time in Kent a great king called Ethelbert. He married a daughter of a king of the Franks, and his wife, Bertha, was already a Christian. Ethelbert allowed her to bring a priest with her, and she prayed to God in a little church near Canterbury, the chief town in Kent.

Now when Ethelbert heard that Augustine was come

he sent word that he was to stay in the island till he had made up his mind what to do. After a while he came himself to the island and said he would hear what Augustine had to say. He would not go into a house to listen to him, as he was afraid lest Augustine should be a wizard who would bind him by a spell. He sat out on the open down waiting for him. Augustine and his monks came bearing a great silver cross and a picture of our Lord and singing litanies. For a long while Augustine spoke to the king. He could not speak English, but he had a man with him who could, and who said again in English all that Augustine had said in Latin. When Augustine had finished speaking, Ethelbert said, "Your words and your promises are very fair, but they are new and strange, and I cannot make up my mind now to leave off serving the gods of my fathers." But he told Augustine that he should have a house in the city of Canterbury to live in with his monks, and that they might teach the people as much as they liked. Then the king's servants led them to their house, and they went into the town carrying their silver cross and their picture and singing their litanies.

When men saw what a holy life Augustine led, and what good words he spoke, they were willing to be taught by him. Many were baptized and became Christians. After a year the king himself became a Christian, and then the ruined churches were built up again, and many thousands of men flocked to be baptized. Ethelbert was a strong king, and so when

he became a Christian many followed his example, not only in his own kingdom but in the other kingdoms round about. When the Pope heard at Rome how well Augustine had succeeded, he sent more men to help him to teach the English. He sent too the vessels and robes which were needed for the services in the churches and many books for the use of the priests. Augustine was called the Bishop of Canterbury, and ever since those days the Bishop of Canterbury has been the chief of all the bishops in the English Church.

Edwin, King of Northumbria, becomes a Christian, A.D. 627.—There was at this time a great king called Edwin reigning in Northumbria, the most northern of the kingdoms of England. He ruled his land well and kept order in it, so that it was said that in his days a woman and her babe might walk from sea to sea and suffer no harm. He had brazen cups fastened to stakes by the springs on the wayside so that the thirsty traveller might drink and be refreshed. There had been no king in England before so great as Edwin, and when he rode through his towns and villages a royal banner of purple and gold was carried before him. He took for his wife Ethelburg, the daughter of Ethelbert the Christian king of Kent, and she brought with her a Christian teacher called Paulinus.

Paulinus was a very zealous Christian, and he was glad to go with the queen that he might preach the Gospel to the heathen Northumbrians. For some time he preached in vain. Edwin did not care to leave his

fathers' gods. But when the queen had a little girl, and Edwin was full of joy at the birth of his daughter, Paulinus asked him whether he would not thank God who had sent him the child. The queen prayed him too that he would serve the true God. Edwin was just going off to fight against his enemies, and he said that if he conquered he would believe that it was God who helped him and would serve Him.

Edwin fought against his enemies and destroyed them, and when he came back he asked Paulinus to teach him about God, and he would often sit alone and think over what Paulinus told him. At last he gathered all his wise men together, for he wished to hear whether they too were willing to become Christians, so that they might all be baptized together. When the wise men heard what Paulinus said, Coifi, who was the chief of the priests of the heathen gods, arose and said, "Hear, O king; no man has served the gods more faithfully than I have, and they have never done anything for me, if this new God will do more for us let us make haste to serve Him."

Then a white-headed old man, one of the chief among the king's followers, arose and said, "The life of man, O king, seems to me like the swift flight of a sparrow through the room where you sit at supper in winter. You sit with all your servants round the hearth-fire whilst without the snow and the rain are raging. The sparrow flies in at one door and out at another. For a moment whilst he is within he is safe from the wintry storm; but for him the fair weather lasts but for a

moment, and he is gone from your sight out again into the dark winter. So it is with the life of man, we see it for a moment, but what went before or what follows after we know not. If therefore this new teaching can tell us anything about this let us hearken to it." The other wise men spoke in the same way.

So when the king found that his wise men thought as he did, he told Paulinus that they were all ready to be baptized and become Christians. Coifi the priest leaped upon a horse, and girding a sword about him, rode in haste to destroy the idols whom he used to worship, and to burn down their temple. The people who saw him at first thought he must be mad, but they soon learned to honour the true God.

Edwin was baptized at York, and he named Paulinus Bishop of York and ordered that there should be built in that city a large and noble church of stone. On the same spot as this old church of Edwin's stands now the beautiful Minster of York.

**Penda fights against the Christians, A.D. 633.**—Edwin reigned gloriously for seventeen years, and by his power the Christian religion was carried amongst the people round about. But at this time there arose a great king called Penda in Mercia, the kingdom on the borders of Wales. Penda was a heathen, and all the men who liked the old gods better than the new faith gathered round him. He fought against Edwin and slew him and his son, and plundered all the kingdom of Northumbria and did many evil deeds there. Paulinus and the queen fled before



Penda, and sailed in a ship back to Kent, and for a time it seemed as if the true faith was quite forgotten in the north of England.

**Oswald, King of Northumbria, A.D. 634.**  
—But after a while a Christian king called Oswald once more arose in Northumbria. He was the son of Edwin's sister, and was a good and brave man. He wished to have Christian teachers for his people again, but he did not send to Canterbury for them.

Before he became king, whilst he was flying alone before his enemies, he found safe shelter for a while in Iona, a rocky island near the west coast of Scotland, where lived a holy Christian called Columba, who had come from Ireland. Now in Ireland the Christians had not been destroyed as they had been by the English in England; there were still men in Ireland who remembered the faith which the Romans had taught them, and they loved to go and teach the heathens about the true God. So Columba came to Iona, and other holy men gathered round him, and they built a monastery, as the houses are called where monks lived together. These monks used to go and preach the Gospel to the heathens in Scotland.

Oswald had seen what holy men they were whilst he lived among them, and when he was king he sent to Iona for some one to come and teach his people. So they sent him a man called Aidan, who was so meek and gentle that he soon won the people's love, and they listened to his teaching. Oswald made Aidan Bishop of Lindisfarne, an island off the coast of Northumbria,

near the royal city of Bamborough. When the tide is low the sands between Lindisfarne and the land are uncovered and it is only an island at high tide. Here Aidan built a monastery, and from it monks went out to preach amongst all the people in the north of England.

But Penda the heathen king was still very strong. Oswald fought bravely against him, but was slain in battle. Still the Northumbrians would not obey Penda, and when he came to Bamborough, the great castle which was built on a rock by the sea would not yield. So Penda bade his men pull down the cottages around and pile their wooden planks against the walls of the castle and fire it. Aidan had fled to one of the little rocky Farne islands near the coast. Thence he saw the flames and the smoke rise round the castle. "See, Lord," he cried, "what ill Penda is doing." And men said that after he had cried to the Lord the wind changed and drove the flames back upon those who were trying to burn down the castle.

**Oswiu, King of Northumbria, A.D. 642.**  
—As Penda grew older he hated the Christians less, and allowed preachers from Lindisfarne to teach his people, and his own son became a Christian. But when Oswald's brother Oswiu made himself King of Northumbria, Penda still fought against him, for he wished that there should be no other king as strong as himself. So Oswiu fought, and the terrible Penda fled before him and was drowned in a river near the place of battle. After that the faith of Christ was spread

through the land and the heathens were never strong enough to fight against it again.

**How St. Cuthbert taught the Gospel, A.D. 687.**—There were now other monasteries in the north besides Iona, and the monks wandered far and wide to teach the people. The holiest of all these monks was a man called Cuthbert. He had been a shepherd-boy on the moors in the Scottish lowlands, and, like David, had read in the skies the glory of God. He went to a little humble monastery at Melrose, and when he had learned enough he wandered out to teach others. He was a big strong man, and could climb steep hills and travel on difficult roads. So he went to the miserable villages among the mountains, where the people were rough and poor. But Cuthbert was a peasant too, and he spoke to them in words that they could understand, and so pleasant was his face that all were willing to listen to him and to speak with him. When he came to any village all men would flock together to hear what he had to say. He taught for many years, and at last he left Melrose and went to Lindisfarne, and the fame of his holiness was great. Then wishing to live away from the cares and bustle of the world, he went to one of the little Farne islands, a bare rock where was no living creature except the sea-birds. There with his own hands he built himself a hut and tilled a little field to grow corn for his food. Many people came to see Cuthbert on his island, to hear the wise words that he spoke, and ask his help when they were in trouble.

Cædmon, the first English Poet, A.D. 680.—Many monasteries, or convents, were built in the north of England, where people lived together that they might learn from one another and grow wiser and holier. There was a great convent at Whitby, at the head of which was a woman Hild by name, and she was so wise that she taught many men. Near Whitby there lived a cowherd called Cædmon. He was once at a feast where the men, wishing to make merry, called upon each in turn to sing a song. Cædmon could not sing, and ashamed to think that he would have to refuse when his turn came, he went out to the stable where he was to stay all night to care for the horses. As he slept there appeared before him one who said, “Cædmon, sing some song to me.” Then he answered, “I cannot sing; for this cause have I left the feast.” Then the man said, “However, thou shalt sing to me.” And Cædmon asked, “What shall I sing?” and he bade him “sing the beginning of created beings.” Then Cædmon sang verses which he had never heard before. When he awoke he remembered his dream and the verses he had sung. He went and asked to be led before the abbess Hild, and he told her his dream, and he repeated the verses he had made to her and many learned men. One of them translated to him a piece of the Bible and bade him sing that, and the next morning he came back and sang the verses he had made. Then Hild, pleased with the beauty of his verses, said that he must become a monk; and they taught him the stories of the Bible that he might sing them. So

Cædmon was the first of the English poets, and his fame added to the glory of Hild's convent at Whitby.

**The Church in England, A.D. 644.**—The Christians in the southern parts of England had all been taught by bishops sent from Rome, and there were some points in which the Roman Christians did not agree with the northern Christians, who had been taught at first by the Irish monks of Iona. When Oswiu, the wise King of Northumberland, saw how quarrels arose because of this he bade the chief bishops from all parts of the land meet together at Whitby and see whether they could come to some agreement. But neither side would give way, and the king, when he had heard what they had to say, said that he was in favour of the Roman customs. Then the northern priests were very sad, and many of them left Northumbria and went back to Scotland.

When the Pope heard what Oswin had done he sent a bishop from Rome called Theodore, who had been a monk of Tarsus, where St. Paul was born. Theodore was a wise man. He set the English Church in order, and placed bishops in each kingdom, and made the Archbishops of York and Canterbury head over the bishops of the north and of the south, and the arrangements he made have lasted till this day.

So because of Oswiu's wisdom there was one Church in England, and this helped to make the English feel that though they had many kings they were yet one people, and the Church did much to teach men to be gentler and to care for other things besides fighting.



After the meeting at Whitby Cuthbert still stayed on the Farne Island, and when Oswiu died the next king, Egfrith, sent for Cuthbert and made him bishop. But soon after Egfrith was killed in battle and the greatness of his kingdom came to an end. Cuthbert went back to his island; he was then an old man, and two months afterwards he died, with his last breath bidding those who gathered round him to live in peace and concord. In later days the great Minster of Durham was built over his body, which men thought had floated thither from Lindisfarne when the Danes laid it waste.

Ini reigns in Wessex, A.D. 688-728.—After Egfrith there was no great king in Northumbria again, but Mercia and Wessex were the greatest of the English kingdoms. Wessex was in the south of England and Mercia in the middle, and the kings of both lands had a great deal of fighting to do against the Welsh, who had fled to the west part of England. The English drove them farther and farther back till the kingdom of Wessex stretched to the borders of Devon.

Ini was one of the chief kings of Wessex. He was a brave man, and fought much against the Welsh and conquered them. He was wise too, and made good laws for his people; and he built new churches and monasteries, and his people lived in peace. Now Ini had a very pious queen called Ethelburg, and she wanted him to leave his kingdom and go to Rome, and do nothing but pray and do good works for the rest of his life. In those days, though the kings had many



houses, they had not much furniture, and when they moved from one house to another in their kingdom their furniture was always packed up and taken with them, and the house was left empty. One day, when Ini and his queen were travelling, Ethelburg bade men drive cattle and pigs into the house after they had left it and fill it with rubbish. Then when they had ridden a little way she said to Ini, "Turn back with me to the house which we have left." And when they came to it they found the hall where the king had feasted full of cattle, and in the place where the king and queen had slept a litter of pigs. Then the queen said to him, "See how all the glory has gone from this hall;" and she told him how the glory of his life would pass away also, and that he must put away the things of this world and give the rest of his life to God. So Ini heeded her words, and he put aside his crown and went to Rome with her, and lived there as a common man for the rest of his life, and his son reigned in his stead.

**Bede lives at Jarrow, A.D. 673-735.—**The English were famous in those days for learning and piety. Stone churches were built in many places, and they began to use glass for the church windows; before they had used horn and parchment. Many houses were built for monks to live in, and in one of these at Jarrow lived Bede, the first English scholar. He wrote many books, chiefly in Latin, and trained up a band of scholars to work with him. He wrote a history of the English Church, from which we learn all the things I have been telling you. The last thing he did was to

translate the Gospel of St. John into English, so that all men might read it. Before he had finished it he fell sick. "Write quickly," he said to his scholars, for he knew that his last days were come. Till the last the dying old man told them what to write, bidding them from time to time write quickly. At last the writer said with joy, "It is finished." Then Bede answered faintly, "It is finished indeed ;" and soon after, with a prayer on his lips, he died.

Offa rules in Mercia, A.D. 757-796.—In Mercia there was a great king called Offa who after Ini's days made all the other kings in England obey him. Offa fought very much against the Welsh too, and he made a great wall of earth called Offa's Dyke to prevent them from coming into his kingdom. This dyke made the boundary between England and Wales, and parts of it can still be seen. Offa's fame reached even to other parts of Europe. In his days one of the most wonderful men whom the world has ever seen, called Charles the Great, ruled over the Franks. Charles several times sent letters to Offa, and Offa sent him a learned Englishman called Alcuin, who lived at Charles' court and wrote books for him.

# THE EARLY ENGLISH KINGS.

EGBERT, 802-838.

Ethelwolf, † 858.

Ethelbald, † 860.

Ethelbert, † 866.

Ethelred, † 871.

Alfred the Great, † 901.

Edward the Elder, † 925.

Ethelred, Lady of the Marchland, † 922.

Ethelstan, † 940.

Edmund, † 946.

Edred, † 955.

Edwy, † 959.

Edgar, † 975.

Edward the Martyr, † 979.

Ethelred the Unready, † 1016.

Edmund Ironside, † 1016.

Alfred, † 1036.

Edward the Confessor, † 1066.

Edmund, † before 1056.

Edward, † 1057.

Edgar the Atheling.

Margaret, married Malcolm,  
King of Scotland.

## CHAPTER III.

### *ENGLAND BECOMES ONE KINGDOM.*

England becomes one kingdom under Egbert, A.D. 802–838.—After the days of Offa, King of Mercia, there arose a great king in Wessex called Egbert. Egbert had seen much of the world, for before he became king he had lived for some years at the court of Charles the Great. He had learned much from Charles, and had watched how Charles by his wisdom gained new lands for himself and made other kings obey him. Egbert made up his mind to try and do the same thing in England. So he fought against the other kings, and one by one he conquered them, and they owned him as their lord. Even the kings of Wales and Scotland owned Egbert for their lord, and at last, after the English had been nearly four hundred years in the land, there was a king who was strong enough to make all the others obey him. So there was one king in the land, as there was one Church.

The Northmen come to England.—A new danger, which came upon all the English people alike, helped to make them feel and act like one nation. They were terrified by the arrival on their coasts of

fast-sailing ships filled with fierce bold men. These were the Northmen, who came from Norway and Denmark. Troubles in their own lands had made the Northmen take to the sea and seek a new home on the stormy waters, and these wild sea-kings, who were still heathens, did much harm wherever they went. They sailed up the English rivers, and where they landed made a rough fort of earth for their camp, and then went out to plunder. They drove the cattle and the horses to the fort, and took all the gold and silver they could find, and plundered and burned the churches and slew the priests.

Ethelwolf reigns in England, A.D. 836–856.—The English had so much to do in fighting against the Northmen that they had no time left to fight against one another. When Egbert died the chief men of the land, who when met together were called the *Wise Men*, chose his son Ethelwolf to reign in his stead. Ethelwolf spent his life in fighting against the Danes, who seized the land and settled down in the north of England. Ethelwolf had four sons, and his elder sons helped him in his wars. The youngest of the four was called Alfred; he was so gentle and good a child that his father and mother loved him more than all his brothers. As he grew up he became lovely to look upon, graceful in all his actions, and skilled in all boyish exercises. His mother was a wise and holy woman, she sang to him tales of the heroes of old and the brave deeds which they had done, and he listened to her with joy. One day she showed him and his brother a beautiful book of poetry, adorned, as books

were in those days when they were all written by the hand, with beautifully coloured letters and ornaments, and she said that whichever of them could soonest say the verses which were in the volume should have it for his own. So Alfred, eager to have the book, took it to his teacher and read it with him, and soon came back and said it to his mother. After this he went on and learned all that he could ; but in his days there were no good teachers in the land, and all his life he grieved that when he was young and had time to learn he had not had good teachers.

Alfred's three elder brothers each reigned for a short time and fought against the Danes, and all died without children. Then Alfred became king. He was only twenty-two years old, and we are told that he had been smitten on the very day of his marriage with a disease which never left him. We do not know what it was, but it troubled him all his life, and this makes us wonder all the more at all the great things he did.

**Alfred becomes king, A.D. 871-901.**—Alfred when he became king had a hard task before him. The land was full of Danes, and their swift boats constantly brought new men to plunder and spoil the land of the English. For a while Alfred fought on, as he was very brave and felt that he was fighting for Christ and for his country against the heathens. But when the fighting had lasted ten whole years the English people were so weary of it that they lost courage, and felt that they would rather serve the Danes than fight any more. Alfred did not lose courage. He



retired with his wife and children and a few faithful followers to a little island in the middle of the marshes of Somersetshire, where he threw up a fort called Athelney, the Prince's Island. There he stayed three months waiting for brighter days. Sometimes he and those who were with him wanted even food and drink, and had to go out and fight against the Danes to get them. Alfred used to comfort himself in those evil days by studying the Book of Psalms. Once when he was wandering in the country round he sought shelter in the hut of a cowherd. The wife of the cowherd was baking bread, and Alfred, seated before the fire, busied himself with mending his bow and arrows. The woman asked him to watch the bread whilst she went out, but Alfred, busy with other thoughts, never heeded that the cakes were burning, till the woman came back and flew at him in a rage, crying, "Canst thee mind the cakes, man, and dost not see them burn? Thou wouldst be ready enough to eat them." She little knew that it was to her king she spoke.

Alfred makes peace with the Danes, A.D. 878.—When the winter was over, and the English saw that their king did not lose courage, many came and joined themselves to him. Soon he had a great army again, and he went out and won a battle over the Danes, so that they agreed to make peace with him. The Danish king Gorm and some of his men became Christians and were baptized, and Alfred stood as his godfather. It was settled that

Gorm was to keep all the part of England north of the great Roman road called Watling Street, and Alfred was to have the rest.

After this there was more quiet in England, but still sometimes new bands of Northmen came and plundered the coasts, and Gorm and his men did not always keep the peace ; but by degrees the Danes became Christians and settled down to lead quiet lives.

**How Alfred ruled the land.**—Alfred still often had to fight against the Danes, but on the whole he managed to keep them out of his land. He got many good soldiers together to fight against them, and he built ships to destroy these terrible men in their own homes, the wild seas. There was much to do before Alfred could bring order into the land, for the Danes had plundered and burned everywhere. He set to work to build up the churches that they had ruined, and he founded new monasteries. He built up London again, which had been destroyed ; and many merchants, Danes as well as English, settled there from all parts of the country. Alfred was very fond of learning, and was grieved that there were no learned men left in his land, which in the days of Bede had been famous for learning. So he sent to all parts of Europe for scholars to come and teach his people, and he placed them at the head of his monasteries that they might teach the clergy. At his court he made a school for his own children and the children of his great lords, and used often to come himself to hear them taught. In this school the children learned to read

and write Latin and English, and they learned the psalms and the old English songs.

Alfred was never idle ; he even found time, though he had so much to see after, to write books for his people, and translated Latin books into English for their use. He made wise laws, and took care that the judges should be taught their duties, that they might be just and see that the laws were kept. Alfred did much for his people. He saved them from the fierce Danes, and afterwards he brought back order and peace, and taught his people, and made the land rich and prosperous again. All this he did because he loved his people, and because he loved his God. He was always bright and cheerful, though he had so many troubles to go through, and such pain to bear from his sickness. Men loved their great king dearly, and there is no one in all English history deserving of more honour than Alfred, whom his people called "England's Darling."

Alfred reigned thirty years, and all men mourned when he died, and they chose his eldest son Edward to be king in his place.

**Edward the Elder, A.D. 901–925.**—Edward, who was called the Elder, was a great soldier, and he fought well against his enemies. Ethelfled his sister had been made by Alfred Lady of Mercia ; she was very brave, and helped Edward. They built up the cities which the Danes had destroyed, and they built strong walls round their cities to make them safe from the enemy, and they built strong castles to defend the land.

Edward made the Danes keep the peace, and he was so strong that the kings of the Danes, the Welsh, and the Scots took him to be their lord. They were still kings in their own lands, but they looked upon him as lord over them, and Edward was the first king who was really king of all England. Edward died at the height of his glory when he had reigned twenty-four years. He had a great many children, and Ethelstan his son was chosen king in his stead.

**Ethelstan, A.D. 925-940.**—Ethelstan was born when his grandfather Alfred was still alive, and Alfred loved him, for he was a good and lovely child. When he was six years old, Alfred gave him a purple cloak and a beautiful sword with a golden sheath fastened to a jewelled belt. Ethelstan was a kind and good king. He was very beautiful, with long golden hair, and he cared for his people. He did not care to grow rich himself, but gave away the spoil he won in war. The Danes and the Scots fought against him, but he won a mighty battle over them; and there is an old song about this battle which tells how Ethelstan slew the Scottish king's son and five Danish sea-kings and many great men. After this there was peace. Foreign kings heard what brave men the English kings were, and four of Ethelstan's sisters were married to foreign kings. Across the Channel was a great man called the Count of Paris, who also had hard work to do fighting against the Northmen, for they had settled on the coast, and the Frankish king had been forced to give them a piece of land, which

they called Normandy. The Northmen would have liked to sail up the river Seine and take Paris, but they could not because the Counts of Paris were so strong. The Count of Paris sent and asked Ethelstan to give him one of his sisters for his wife, and he sent him splendid gifts, the spear of the great Emperor Charles, and a wonderfully carved cup and splendid horses and jewels ; and Ethelstan's sister was sent to be the count's wife. Many kings sent Ethelstan presents. The King of Norway sent him a great ship with a gilded prow and a purple sail, with a row of gilt and painted shields all round. Ethelstan only reigned fifteen years, and men were very sad when he died, and as he had no children they chose his brother Edmund to reign in his stead.

**Edmund A.D. 940-946.**—The Danes thought they would try and fight against the English king again, but Edmund went against them and won five great towns from them, and after that they kept the peace. Edmund made friends with a learned monk called Dunstan, and he made him abbot, or chief of the monks at Glastonbury, one of the great English monasteries. Dunstan had studied much, and had learned music and painting and how to work in metals. He was also very wise, and knew how to rule men. He did a great deal of good at Glastonbury, and rebuilt the church and kept the monks in order.

When Edmund had reigned only six years he was sitting one day at meat with his men when a robber called Liofa, who had been ordered to keep out of the

land, pressed his way into the hall and sat down at the feast. The king, angry at his boldness, bade his cupbearer turn him out. But Liofa turned upon the cupbearer and tried to kill him. Then the king, eager to help his cupbearer, seized Liofa by the hair of his head and threw him on the ground. But Liofa with his dagger stabbed the king from below. The king's men fell upon the robber and cut him to pieces, but the king lay dead. Then as the king's sons were only babes, they chose his brother Edred to be king.

**Edred, A.D. 946-955.**—King Edred had much fighting to do, for the men of the north tried to set up another king, but Edred went against them and made them obey him. In all things Edred listened to the advice of Dunstan, for he knew how wise he was, and Dunstan managed things wisely and well. Edred was a good and a pious king like his grandfather Alfred; he had weak health, but still he was brave and active.

**Edwy rules foolishly, A.D. 955-959.**—Edred reigned eleven years, and when he died the Wise Men chose Edwy, Edmund's son, who was now old enough, to be king after Edred. Edwy was a foolish king, and cared only about getting his own way. He quarrelled with all his best friends, and at last drove Dunstan out of the kingdom. But Edwy died after four years, and then his brother Edgar was chosen king.

**Edgar rules gloriously, A.D. 959-975.**—Edgar had to fight first against the Welsh and the Scots, but then he made peace, and he was called



Edgar the Peace-Winner, because there was peace whilst he ruled. He was not crowned till he had reigned fourteen years; we do not know why he waited so long, but when at last he was crowned, he held a mighty feast at Chester. Many lords and priests came to it, as well as the Welsh and Scottish kings, who owned Edgar as their lord. The king sat in his boat on the river Dee, and eight kings came down and met him at the water-side, and they rowed him in his boat whilst Edgar steered.

Edgar made Dunstan Archbishop of Canterbury, and he and Dunstan worked together and did many good things for England. They made wise laws and built beautiful churches. Dunstan tried hard to make the monks and priests lead holy lives, and to obey the rules of the Roman Church, which did not allow priests to marry. Edgar had many ships, and he sent his fleet to sail round England every year so that no foes might come near it. He died when he was very young, only thirty-one, and evil days followed for England.

**How England was governed.**—Before we go on let us look back a little and think of the change which had come over England since Alfred became king, a little more than a hundred years before the death of Edgar. England had now only one king, and he was stronger than any of the kings before had been, for he ruled over more people. The English people felt that if they kept together and were true to their king, they would be strong and able to keep out their enemies, and so they learned to feel like one people and to love

their country. Their kings were brave soldiers and drove out their enemies, and they made wise laws so that their people could live in peace and safety. The land was divided into shires as it is now, and over each shire the king placed one of his thanes or servants, as the lords were called who served him at his court or fought under him in battle. The chief people in the shires used to meet together to settle the business of their shire and judge all those who were accused of having done wrong. So from the very first the English people learned to manage their own affairs, and each village and each shire ruled itself and kept its roads in order and raised soldiers to send up to the king.

Besides these meetings in the shires the chief men of the kingdom used to meet together with the king to decide what was best to be done for the whole land. This was the meeting of the Wise Men, or the Witan as it was called, and it said who should be king, though it generally chose the eldest son of the last king. During the hundred years from Alfred to Edgar, during which great and wise kings had ruled in the land, many cities had been built and fine churches, and houses for monks and nuns to live in. There were priests in the villages, and the people served the true God. The Danes who had settled in England became Christians too. On the whole there was peace, and men tilled the land and bred cattle, and England grew rich and prospered.

## CHAPTER IV.

### *THE DANISH CONQUEST.*

Edward, A.D. 975-978.—When Edgar died he left two sons, Edward and Ethelred, and the Wise Men chose Edward to be king, and Dunstan advised him in all that he did. But Edward's stepmother, Ethelred's mother, wished her own son to be king, and some say that she slew Edward with her own hands; anyhow, he was cruelly murdered, and Ethelred was king in his stead. He was called Ethelred the Unready because he was without *rede* or counsel, which means that he acted foolishly, and would not listen to the advice of his Wise Men.

Ethelred the Unready, A.D. 979-1016.—As long as Dunstan lived he kept Ethelred from going very wrong, but he died after Ethelred had been king for ten years. Then sore trouble came upon England, for the Danes began to come to her shores again and plunder and burn her cities. Men must have longed for the days when Edgar's fleet sailed round England twice in the year and kept the Danes away. But though the English tried to fight against the Danes they could not conquer them, and at last a great sum of money was given to

the Danes to make them go away. They sailed away for a time, but soon came back again and did terrible evil. They left their ships and took horses, and rode far and wide, and killed the men and the cattle, and burned and robbed the houses and the churches. They settled in the land with a great army, and Ethelred paid them much money to make them keep the peace, but they always began to plunder and burn again. Then Ethelred angered the Danes very much, because once, when he pretended to be at peace with them, he secretly sent his men to kill a great many of the Danes whilst they were bathing. So Sweyn, the Danish king, who was a fierce and brave man, swore that he would drive out Ethelred and become king himself.

At last, after many years of fighting, Ethelred had to flee to Normandy. He had ruled the people so badly that they were not sorry to lose him, and they took Sweyn for their king. But Sweyn died soon after, and he had been so fierce and cruel that the Wise Men did not wish to have another Dane as king, and they sent for Ethelred to come back again. The Danes chose Canute, Sweyn's son, to be their king. Then Ethelred and his brave son Edmund, who was called Ironside, fought against Canute, and they drove him out. Soon after Ethelred died and Edmund Ironside was king.

How Canute became King of England, 1016-1035.—Canute came back to England with a great army, and he and Edmund fought five battles in one year. Edmund was very brave ; once he met Canute

in battle and clove his shield in two with his sword. At last they grew tired of war, and the people longed for peace. So Canute and Edmund agreed to divide the land between them, and Edmund ruled in the south and Canute in the north. But Edmund died soon after, and then Canute ruled alone.

Canute wished to be sure of the throne; so he was cruel when he began to rule, and caused many Englishmen whom he feared to be sent out of the land or to be secretly killed. Then all men feared him, and did as he bade them. But when he felt sure that no man would try to turn him out of the kingdom, he began to treat the people more kindly, for he wished them to forget that he was a stranger. He sent to Normandy to ask Emma, the widow of Ethelred, to come and be his wife. Emma was sister to the Duke of Normandy, and after Ethelred's death she had fled away to her brother. She came back to England to be the wife of Canute, her husband's enemy. But she left the sons she had borne to Ethelred in Normandy. She seems to have loved Canute much more than Ethelred, and to have cared only for the children she bore to him.

Canute was only twenty-one when he first became king of the English. As he grew older he grew wiser and gentler, and was no longer wild and fierce like the Danes of old. He was a very mighty king, and ruled over Denmark and Norway as well as over England, but he loved England best of all his kingdoms. He would not let his Danes spoil the English, and he was careful to spend as little money as possible, so as not to

have to ask his people to pay much money in taxes. He was very generous to the Church, and gave many rich gifts to different churches in the land. He hated evil, and all wrong-doers were severely punished in his day. He was fond of music and singing, and used to make verses himself. One day he was being rowed along the river to Ely, and he heard the song of the monks in church borne sweetly across the water ; then he began to sing too, and sang these words :—

“ Merry the monks of Ely sing  
As by them rows Canute the king.  
Row, men, to the land more near  
That we these good monks’ song may hear.’

Canute was a true Christian. A story is told about him that one day he was on the sea-shore with some of his men, and they began to praise him because he was so strong and great. Then Canute bade them place a chair near the water’s edge, and he sat down in it and said, “O sea, I am thy lord, my ships sail over thee whither I will, and this land against which thou dashest is mine ; stay then thy waves, and dare not to wet the feet of thy lord and master.” But the tide was coming in, and the waves came on, and came round the chair, and wetted Canute’s feet and clothes. Then Canute turned to his men and said, “See how weak is the power of kings and of all men, for ye see that the waves will not hearken to my voice. Honour then God only, and serve Him, for Him do all things obey.” After that day Canute would not wear his crown any



more, but he put it on the head of an image of Christ at Winchester.

**Canute goes to Rome.**—Canute made a pilgrimage to Rome, and he wrote home a long letter to all the great men in England and told them how he had seen the Pope and the Emperor and had talked to them. Then he said that he had made up his mind always to do rightly for the future, and that he hoped God would forgive him for all the things he had done wrong, and he bade all his officers in England to deal justly with all men whether rich or poor, and to do violence to no man

There were two Englishmen whom Canute loved and honoured above all others ; these were Leofric and Godwin, and he made Leofric Earl or Lord over Mercia, and Godwin Earl of Wessex. Leofric was a good man, and tried to make men live peaceably together. Godwin was a brave man, and very wise, and Canute loved him dearly, and gave him much power.

**Harold Harefoot becomes king, A.D. 1035–1042.**—When Canute died he left his kingdoms to his three sons. He said that Harthacnut, the son whom Emma bore him, was to reign in Denmark, and one of his other sons, Harold, was to reign in England, and Sweyn in Norway. But Emma wished her son to be king in England, and Godwin helped her, and they divided the land between Harold and Harthacnut. But Harthacnut stayed in Denmark, and the English grew tired of waiting for him, so they chose Harold to be king over the whole land. He was not a wise king like his father,

and he did some very cruel things. The two sons of Ethelred the Unready, Alfred and Edward, who had fled to Normandy, came back to England; and Harold bade his men seize Alfred, and they blinded him and put him to death cruelly, but Edward escaped to Normandy.

Harthacnut becomes king, A.D. 1040–1042.—When Harold died men sent and asked Harthacnut to come and be king, so he came to England; but he was a stern king, and his people did not love him. He sent and asked Edward, Ethelred's son, to come from Normandy and live at his court, for Edward was his half-brother, as they were both Emma's sons. Harthacnut did not reign long. He died suddenly whilst he was drinking at a great feast.

Earl Godwin makes Edward the Confessor king, A.D. 1042.—Then Godwin, the great earl, who was the chief man in all England, persuaded the English to choose Edward for their king; so there was an English king again, and the Danes no longer ruled in the land. Edward married Godwin's daughter, and this made Godwin more powerful than ever. He had many sons too who were brave, strong men, and some of them were made earls by Edward, so that the family of Godwin was greater than any other family in the land.

Edward was a good, gentle man; but he was weak and timid, and more fit to be a monk than a king. He had lived so long in Normandy that he loved the Normans better than the English, and he made many Normans come over to his court. The English did not

like to see these strangers round their king. Some of the Normans did lawless deeds, and Godwin said that they should be punished. This made the king angry, and he quarrelled with Godwin, and got the Wise Men to say that Godwin and his sons must leave the land and not come back again.

**Duke William of Normandy visits England, A.D. 1050.**—Whilst Godwin was away William the Duke of Normandy came to visit Edward. William was a wise, strong man. He had been duke ever since he was seven years old. Many enemies had tried to take his lands from him because they thought that he was too weak to defend himself. But as he grew up William showed how brave he was, and he overcame all his foes and ruled his lands wisely, and made all men do as he would. It is said that whilst he was in England, Edward, who had no children, promised him that he should have the kingdom at his death. But Edward had no right to promise the kingdom to any one, for no one ought to be king in England unless he were chosen by the Wise Men.

**Earl Godwin dies, A.D. 1053.**—Whilst Godwin was away everything went wrong in England. At last Godwin and his son Harold gathered a fleet and sailed to London. Then the King wanted to go with his men and fight against him, but it was thought better that the Wise Men should judge between them. The Wise Men said that Godwin and his sons might come back, so they came back, and had great power in the land again. Soon after Godwin, who was now an old

man, died, and the English mourned for him, for he was



HAROLD EMBARKS ON BOARD SHIP.—Bayeux Tapestry.

a good friend to them, and hated the Normans, whom they hated.

Godwin's earldom was given to his son Harold, and he was brave and wise like his father, and mightier than any one else in the land. Once whilst Harold was on the sea a storm arose and drove his ship upon the coast of France, and he fell into the hands of William, Duke of Normandy. William kept Harold some time at his court, and would not let him go until he swore that he would help William to be King of England when Edward died. Harold had to swear as William wished him, for he was in William's power. Then Harold went back to England, and he was the chief man in the land, and ordered the affairs of the kingdom, and the people loved and trusted him.

## CHAPTER V.

### *THE NORMAN CONQUEST.*

Edward the Confessor dies, A.D. 1066.—When Edward died he was buried in Westminster Abbey, which he had founded. The old part of the abbey which he built can still be seen. Other kings built more on to it till it became the beautiful church it now is, and many kings and great men have been buried there since Edward. Edward had lived a holy life, and so men called him Edward the Confessor. The land had peace in his days; and when afterwards evil things happened to the English they looked back sadly to the days when Edward was king and spoke of the good laws of Edward the Confessor.

Harold, Godwin's son, is chosen king.—After Edward's death the Wise Men chose Harold to be king. The news was quickly taken over the sea to William of Normandy. He was getting ready to hunt when the messenger from England came to him. He turned aside to hear what he had to say. Then he went back to his castle. He was so angry that he spoke to no man, and no man spoke to him. He sat on a bench and thought, his face covered with his cloak. He had



long hoped to be King of England some day ; now he



WILLIAM SAILS FOR ENGLAND, — Bayeux Tapestry.

saw that if he wished to be king he must win the kingdom by his sword. He made his plans very care-

fully. He told everybody how Edward had promised him the kingdom, and how Harold had sworn to help him to be king. He said that Harold had wickedly seized the crown, and that it must be taken from him. By many clever words William persuaded men that he ought to be King of England, and not Harold. He told his barons, as the chief men in his duchy were called, what a rich land England was, and that if they would come and help him to conquer it they would gain great wealth. Then the barons agreed to help him, and William hired soldiers and fitted out ships to go over to England.

Harold makes ready to fight William of Normandy.—When Harold heard what William was doing he made ready to meet him. First he had other foes to fight against. His own brother Tostig wished to have lands in England, which Harold would not give him. So Tostig got the King of Norway to help him with an army, and they landed in the north of England. Harold went against them, and they fought a great battle. The King of Norway and Tostig and many of their men were killed, and then the Northmen fled away to their ships. The next day Harold made peace with the Northmen, and they sailed away home again.

William sails for England.—At this time William was all ready to start for England. He was waiting for a fair wind to take him over the sea. At last, two days after the battle which Harold had won over the Northmen, William was able to set sail. Harold

with his ships and his soldiers was still away in the north, and there was no one to prevent William from landing at Pevensey, near Hastings. William himself was the first armed man out of the fleet who set foot on English ground. As he sprang from the ship his foot slipped, and he fell with both his hands upon the ground. His men thought this was a bad omen, and raised a loud cry of grief. But William sprang joyfully up with both his hands full of sand and cried that the kingdom was his, for he had the earth of England in his two hands. Then all his men landed in order, and he marched to Hastings. There he built a castle of wood and made a strong camp. He sent out his men to plunder all the country round, and they burned the houses and did much evil.

When Harold heard that William had landed in England, and that his men were doing such cruel harm, he set off quickly south to go against William. One of his brothers who was with him begged him to lay waste the land between Hastings and London, so that William might find no food for his men, but Harold said, "I was made king to cherish this folk; how shall I lay waste this land of theirs?" So Harold camped with the soldiers whom he had gathered together on the hill at Senlac, near Hastings, and William and his men lay below, and they made ready for battle. In the English camp men were very merry, and sang and feasted all night, but the Normans spent the night in prayer.

**The battle of Hastings, A.D. 1066.**—The next morning Harold drew up his men for the battle;

in front of them he put a long line of stakes



BATTLE OF HASTINGS, — *Bayeux Tapestry.*

driven in the ground, and he bade them not go outside the stakes. Then William set his men in order,

and they marched to attack the English. In front of all went a Norman minstrel, who had asked leave of the duke to strike the first blow. He rode on singing a song about the deeds of the great Emperor Charles, and as he sang he threw his sword in the air and caught it again, so that all men wondered at his skill. He rushed upon the English and slew two men before he was slain himself. Then the battle began. The Norman knights fought on horseback; but the English fought on foot, standing behind their pales with great axes in their hands and slaying all who came near. William pressed on in front himself, and once his men thought he was killed, but he threw off his helmet that all might see him and cried, "I live, and will yet by God's help win the day."

At last the English forgot Harold's orders and came out from behind their pales and fell upon the Normans. But the Normans turned and smote them, and an arrow hit Harold in the eye, so that he died. After that there was no hope. The noblest of the English fell fighting bravely; then the rest turned and fled from the hill. William and his horsemen followed them. In their hurry many of the horsemen stumbled on the steep slope of the hill and in the marshy ground below. Then the English stopped their flight and turned upon them. So many of the Normans were slain there at the foot of the hill that the place was long called Malfosse, the bad ditch. At last the English were all killed or driven away, and William pitched his tent on the top of the hill amongst the dead. The English women came and



asked to be allowed to bury the bodies of their dead, and he gave them leave. When they found the body of Harold he bade them bury it under a stone heap on the cliffs, for he said, "He kept the shore well while he lived, let him keep it now he is dead."

**William of Normandy becomes King of England.**—As Harold was dead William hoped that the English would come and ask him to be their king. But the English did not wish to have a stranger to rule over them. Some of them met together in London and chose a boy called Edgar the Atheling, who was the grandson of Edmund Ironside, to be king. So William and his army left Hastings to go to London. Before he went to London he marched to the great cities of Dover, Winchester, and Canterbury, and made them his own. Then the English who were in London grew frightened. Many of the chief of the English did not want to have Edgar for their king, and did not care to fight for him. If the English had held all together they might perhaps have driven William out of the land again. But the men who were in London did not dare to fight against William. So they came out to meet him, and brought Edgar with them. They knelt humbly before William and asked him to be their king. Then William promised to be their loving lord.

After this William went into London, and on Christmas Day he was crowned in Westminster Abbey. The people who had gathered to see the sight were first asked whether they would have William for their king, and they shouted, "Yea, yea, King William." They



shouted so loud that the Norman soldiers outside who



WILLIAM'S HERALDS. — Bayeux Tapestry.

did not know what they said, thought they meant evil, and set fire to some houses round the abbey. When

the English saw the flames they rushed out to save their homes. No one was left in the abbey but William and the bishops. In haste and fear they crowned him, whilst outside the English fought with the Norman soldiers. William was very sorry for this fighting, for he wished there to be peace between his Normans and the English.

William had got his wish, and was king of the English. He was able to say that the English had chosen him to be their king ; but they had only chosen him because they could not do anything else, for they feared his might.

This coming of William is called the Norman Conquest. It made a great change in England, but not so great a change as the coming of the English had made. The great English lords were mostly killed in fighting against William, and he gave their lands to his barons. But though the Norman barons became the chief men in the land the common people were still English. At the court French was spoken, but all over the land English was spoken. The English people kept their old customs and their old love of freedom. In time the Norman kings and the Norman barons became true Englishmen, and the difference between the two peoples was forgotten.

THE NORMAN KINGS.

WILLIAM I., the Conqueror = Matilda, daughter of Baldwin V., Count of Flanders, 1066-1087.

Robert, Duke of Normandy, † 1134.

William, † 1128.

WILLIAM II.,  
Rufus,  
1087-1100.

HENRY I. = Matilda of  
Scotland,  
1100-1135.

Adela = Eustace, Count  
of Blois.

STEPHEN, 1135-1154.

William, † 1119.

Matilda, † 1167 = (1) Emperor Henry V.

= (2) Geoffrey Plantagenet,  
Count of Anjou.

HENRY II.

## CHAPTER VI.

### *THE NORMAN KINGS.*

William puts down the English rebels, 1066–1071.—The English people had to take William for their king, but they did not like having a foreign ruler. After William had been three months in England he went back to Normandy to show the Normans how great a king he was and to fetch his wife, of whom he was very fond. He took with him some of the chief of the English, and much spoil of gold and silver vessels and splendid robes. William had tried to treat the English kindly, but when he went away the Normans whom he had left to rule in his stead did many harsh deeds. So the English hated the Normans, and plotted how they might drive them out of the land. William had to come home to fight against the rebels, who began to rise against him in many parts of the country.

It took William five years before he could put down all the English who rose against him. He was a hard man; and when he saw that the people would not willingly have him for their king he showed them how strong he was, and that it was no good fighting against him. The people in Northumberland rose against

him, and William went north with his army resolved to teach the rebels a lesson. He laid waste all the north of England. The houses and all that was in them, the cattle and the stores of corn, were all burned. Many of the wretched people who were left died of hunger, and for nine years afterwards no corn was grown in the land. It was a cruel deed, and men said that the wrath of God was sure to follow upon it; but it frightened the people in the north, and they did not dare to rise against William again.

In many of the cities William built great castles, in which he put his soldiers to keep the citizens in order. In London he built the Tower, about which we shall hear a great deal in the history of England. William took away the lands of all the English who rose against him and gave them to his Norman followers. In this way nearly all the land passed from English to Norman owners. English farmers and English labourers still worked it, but they had to pay many services to the Norman lords.

The discontent of the Norman barons, 1075.—But though the Norman lords got all these rich English lands they were not satisfied. William was a strict master to them as well as to the English, but they wanted to do just as they liked, and not to obey William. At home in Normandy they had already given him a great deal of trouble. In those days when a king, or duke, or any other lord gave lands to his followers they made him promises in return. They were called his vassals, and

they had to do *homage* to him. The word *homage* is made from the French word *homme*, which means *man*. When a vassal did homage to his lord he became his man. He knelt before him and put his hands between his and swore to be his man for life and death, so God help him. The vassal had to fight for his lord, and sometimes to give him money, but he could do what he liked with his own land and with the people who lived on it. Sometimes he would give some of his land away to other men, and then they did homage to him and became his men, and had to fight for him. This way of holding land was called the feudal way, and when the vassals grew very strong it led to a great deal of trouble, because they did not care for their lord, but did what they liked, and their servants only obeyed them, and had nothing to do with the lord of the land. William had found that his vassals in Normandy were much too strong, and he did not want them to grow so strong in England. He wanted that every man in England should look upon him as his lord and master. So he ordered that not only the men to whom he gave land himself, but every man in England who had any land at all, was to swear to obey him and become his man. He did not let any baron hold much land together, and he did not make many earls, but he sent servants of his own, whom he called sheriffs, to rule the counties. In all sorts of ways he prevented the barons from growing too strong. Of course the barons did not like this at all. They did not care about William, and had only come to England with



him because they hoped to get more power and more lands there than they had had in Normandy. So the barons did all that they could to trouble William, and at last they persuaded William's eldest son Robert to help them to rebel against his father.

This was a great grief to William and his wife Matilda. Matilda loved both William and Robert very dearly, and she wept and prayed them to make peace. But though Robert behaved better for a time he soon began to disobey his father again, and gave him a great deal of trouble all the rest of his life.

**Lanfranc becomes Archbishop of Canterbury, 1070.**—William was so strong that one by one he got the better of all his enemies, and made the disobedient barons obey him just as he had made the English people obey him. In all his difficulties William had one true friend who stood by him and helped him; this was Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury. Lanfranc was an Italian, and one of the most learned men in Europe. He was very wise and good, and William had grown to love and trust him very much. Already in Normandy Lanfranc had been a great help to William, and when William came to England and had to choose a new Archbishop of Canterbury he at once thought of Lanfranc. So Lanfranc came to England too and worked with William to bring order into the land. They put Norman bishops over the churches in England, and Lanfranc took care that these new bishops should be wise and holy men, so that they did a great deal of

good. Men cared more about religion, and many new and beautiful churches were built. The Normans were very skilful builders, and many of their churches can still be seen. The most beautiful of all is the great Cathedral of Durham.

**How William ruled the land.**—For the last eleven years of William's life there was peace and order in England. It was said that in his day a man might go through the land with his bosom full of gold and no one would dare to slay him. But though he gave them peace, William was in some things very hard upon the people. Men said that he loved money too much, and he got a great deal of money from the English people. There was no amusement William loved so much as hunting, and to make himself a good forest to hunt in he laid waste one of the most fertile parts of England, from Winchester to the sea-coast. It was called the New Forest, and has been called so till this day. He did not want any one but himself to kill the game, and he made a law that whoever killed a hart or a hind should be blinded; men said that he loved the tall stags as if he were their father. But though rich and poor murmured at his laws no one dared to disobey them. He made his government very strong, for he was wise enough to keep all the best of the old English ways of governing, and to join to them only what was best in the Norman ways.

The thing that William cared most about was that all men should obey him; but though he was stern, he was just. He did not want one thing one day and

another the next, and he ruled himself as well as other men. He looked very fierce and kingly, and men trembled before him when he was angry. He was so strong that when his horse was at full gallop he could draw a bow which no one else could pull. He loved to show men his power and his riches, and every year had great feasts in the chief English cities, to which all the great men in the land came. At his feasts he treated every one kindly, but he was mostly so stern that men feared him rather than loved him. To his wife Matilda only he was very tender, and they loved one another dearly all their lives. When she died he was very sad, and he had a beautiful tomb of gold and gems put over her grave at Caen, in Normandy.

**William's death, 1087.**—As William grew older he grew very stout; and he heard that the King of France made jests at his great size, so he swore to be revenged on him. He marched into France with his soldiers in August when the harvest stood ripe in the fields, and he destroyed everything that came in his way. When he came to the city of Mantes he set fire to it, and whilst he was looking at the flames with joy his horse trod on a burning ember and stumbled. William was thrown heavily forward against the saddle and badly hurt. He was carried away to Rouen to die.

As he lay on his deathbed men asked him what was to become of his country after his death. He said that his eldest son Robert must have Normandy, because he had promised it him. He wished William, his second

son, to have England, but he did not name him, for he said that as he had won England by the sword God alone must decide who should be king there after him. He grew sad as he thought of his sins, of the many lands he had laid waste, of the many people he had slain by hunger and the sword. To try and make up for his sins he left his treasures to the poor and to the churches in his lands, and said that all prisoners should be allowed to go free.

He dictated a letter to Lanfranc telling him what he wished done for the government in England, and he gave it to his son William, who left his father even before his death and went away to England. To his youngest son Henry, William only gave money, and bade him be patient and let his elders go before him. One morning early, as the bell was ringing for the first service, William stretched out his hands in prayer, and his soul passed away.

When he was dead all those who loved peace trembled, for the strong arm was gone that had kept order. Those who stood round his bed hurried to their homes to save their goods from the plunderers. Everything in the king's room was stolen, the furniture, the clothes, and the vessels, and the body of the dead king was left alone on the floor. None of his servants came to bury him, for each man thought only of himself. But at last a humble Norman knight took the King's body by water to Caen, and there it was buried in the great abbey which William himself had built.

**William II., the Red, becomes king, 1087.**  
—After the Conqueror's death the Norman barons both in England and Normandy wanted to have his eldest son Robert for their king. But Lanfranc, who was the wisest man in England, followed the Conqueror's wishes, and crowned his second son William king. He was called William the Red from the colour of his hair, and was a fierce man who feared nobody, and only cared to please himself. But he was eager to do anything to be made king, and promised Lanfranc that he would rule justly and care for the Church and the people. He promised the English to be a good and kind king to them, and they believed his promises, and chose him rather than Robert. But many of the barons fought against William to try and make Robert king. At last Robert, who was very fond of fighting, went away to the East, to Palestine, to help other Christians who were fighting to win back Christ's sepulchre from the Saracens. Palestine, the land in which Christ had lived, and where His sepulchre was, had been conquered by a people who did not believe in Him. The Christians all over Europe wished to win it back, so that pious men might go there as pilgrims in peace to see the holy places. Those who went to fight in Palestine against the Saracens were called the soldiers of the Cross, and the war was called the Crusade. Many went on the Crusade because they cared about fighting and glory rather than because they cared for Christ. So Robert and many of the barons who followed him went on the Crusade, and there was peace in England.



Lanfranc dies, 1090, and Anselm becomes Archbishop, 1093.—Still the English people were not happy, for William the Red was a cruel, hard king. When Lanfranc died two years after William the Conqueror, there was no one to keep William the Red in order. He did not fear God any more than he feared man, and scoffed at all good things. He was very fond of money, and got it out of the people in all sorts of unjust ways, so that they suffered terribly from his hardness. After Lanfranc's death he did not choose a new archbishop, but kept for himself the money and the lands that ought to belong to the archbishop. When the barons and the people begged him to name a new archbishop he paid no heed to their wishes. But nearly four years after Lanfranc's death William the Red fell very ill; he was afraid that he was going to die, and grew frightened when he thought of his sins. It chanced that there was at that time a holy man in England called Anselm, whom many men wished to have as archbishop. So William sent for him to his bedside and told him that he was to be archbishop. But Anselm did not care at all for this great honour. He said he was only a humble monk, and wished to live in peace, and that he was not fit for so high a place. The men who stood round had to force the cross into his hands, and he was made archbishop against his will.

William the Red did not die, and when he got better he forgot all his vows to lead a new life, and went back to his old sins. Anselm was not frightened



for him as other men were, for he cared more for the glory of God than for anything man could do, and spoke boldly to William and found fault with him for his sins, and would not do as William wanted him. So William hated Anselm, and treated him so ill that Anselm had to leave the land, and did not come back till the Red King's death.

**William the Red is killed, 1100.**—William the Red went on in his wicked ways. The barons did as he did, for no order was kept in the land, since William cared for nothing but money and his own amusements, and the people groaned in misery.

One day William was out hunting in the New Forest when he was shot by an arrow and killed on the spot. No one knew whether this was done by chance or on purpose, but every one rejoiced that the wicked king was dead.

**Henry I. is chosen king, 1100.**—When William the Red was shot, his youngest brother Henry was hunting with him. Robert was still away on the Crusade, so Henry seized this chance, and had himself chosen king by the few barons who were round William at his death.

Henry knew very well that the barons would like best to have Robert for their king, so he thought that the wisest thing he could do was to gain the goodwill of the people. He promised the people that he would rule them well, and do away with all the evil customs which had sprung up in William the Red's reign, and that he would give them back their old laws. All

these promises were written down on a sheet of parchment, which was called a charter. It was a great thing for the people to get this charter from the King, for it showed that the people had rights as well as the King, so that he could not do just as he liked.

The English people were full of hope that good days were coming once more. Henry had been born in England, so they could look upon him as really an English king. They were still more pleased when he married an English maiden, Edith, daughter of Malcolm, King of Scotland, by his wife Margaret, who was Edgar the Atheling's sister. So Edith was sprung from the old English kings. She took the name of Maud on her marriage, and she was so good and kind that the people loved her dearly, and called her the "Good Queen Maud."

**Anselm comes back to England, 1100.**  
—One of the first things Henry did was to send for Anselm to come back to England. Anselm hoped that now he would be able to set the Church to rights, but unfortunately Henry and he did not quite agree. Henry too wanted the Church to be put into order, but he wanted to do things his own way, and Anselm thought that the Pope and the bishops should settle the affairs of the Church and not the king. So for many years Henry and Anselm could not agree. The quarrel went so far that Anselm had to leave England for three years. But both Henry and Anselm were wise men, and at last each gave way a little, so the quarrel was ended and Anselm came back.

Henry listened to Anselm when he spoke to him of

the sorrows of the poor, and he did what he could to help them. Men mourned very much when Anselm died, and he was famed all over Europe for his learning and his piety.

The war between Henry and Robert, 1100-1106.—Robert came back from the Crusade very soon after Henry was crowned king. He was very angry at what had happened, as he wanted to be king himself. The barons were willing to help him; they knew that Robert was foolish and good-natured, and they hoped to have things more their own way if he was king instead of Henry, who was strict and hard. So Robert got his men together in Normandy to fight against Henry; but Henry won a great battle, where he took Robert prisoner. After this Henry ruled both in England and Normandy, and he kept Robert in prison till his death. Still the barons often struggled against Henry, and gave him a great deal of trouble. This was a very good thing for the people, because it made Henry eager to have them for his friends. He tried to rule them well and give them what they wanted, so that they might help him against the barons.

How Henry I. governed the land.—Henry was a hard man like his father William the Conqueror. He wanted every one to do as he wished, and he knew how to make men afraid of him. Fortunately he wanted things which were good for the people as well as for himself, for he wished to make his own power strong in England and Normandy and to keep the barons quiet. As he found it difficult to do everything himself, he

chose some of the men he could trust most to be his ministers and help him to govern the land. Ever since Henry's days there have been ministers to help the king to govern ; but at first the king chose whom he liked to be his ministers, now the ministers must please the people as well as the king.

**The Great Council.**—Henry I. did just as seemed good in his own eyes, though he still pretended to ask the advice of his Great Council. In the days of the early English kings the Great Council had been called the Witenagemot or meeting of the Wise Men. Now it had come to be only a meeting of the king's chief barons, and when the king asked them their advice about any point they did not dare to do anything but agree with him.

**The punishment of wrong-doers.**—Henry I. and his ministers were very strict about punishing any one who did wrong. They made all wrong-doers pay large sums of money, which were called fines. The chief reason why Henry cared to see wicked men punished was because he could get so much money in that way. Many wrong-doers were tried in the county courts, but when the matter could not be settled there they were brought before the king's court, where the king or his chief minister sat with his barons to judge them. So men were made to feel that the king's power stretched over the whole land, and that no wrong-doer could go unpunished.

**The Exchequer Court.**—Henry I. was very fond of money ; he got it from the people in all sorts of

different ways. The sheriffs collected the money which was owing to the king in the counties from fines and the rent of land belonging to the king, and they brought it up and paid it into the king's Exchequer twice a year. The Exchequer was a meeting of the chief servants of the king, who had to settle all the money matters of the land. The people often found it hard to pay all the money the king asked for; but though Henry I. was strict he kept peace in the land, and men could till their fields in safety, so they were content to have him for their king.

Henry I.'s son William is drowned, 1120. —Henry I. had an only son William whom he loved very dearly, and whom he hoped would be king after him. William had been in Normandy with his father, and when they started to return to England Henry sailed first, and a favourable wind quickly took his ship to England. William commanded another ship, and with him there were a great many young nobles. They were all very merry, and before starting feasted joyously together, drinking a great deal of wine. The sailors too feasted and drank, and when night came they set sail all much too merry to know what they were doing. The wind blew the ship swiftly on, and as the careless sailors took no heed where they were going they were driven on to a great rock. In vain they tried to get the ship off. The waves dashed over her and washed the men overboard; and so many tried to get into the boats that were put off from the ship that they sank, and all were drowned. Only one man



escaped to tell the sad story. Henry grieved so bitterly for his son that he is said never to have smiled again.

Henry I. wishes his daughter Matilda to reign after him.—Henry I. had only a daughter left ; her name was Matilda, and she had married the Emperor, who had since died. Henry hoped that Matilda would be Queen of England after his death ; but it seemed a strange thing in those days that a woman should rule over the rough barons. Henry I. did all he could to make her sure of the crown. All the barons and the chief clergy were made to swear to be true to her, and he married her to Geoffrey of Anjou, son of Fulk, Count of Anjou, the man he most feared. But all that he could do could not settle what should happen after his death.

Stephen of Boulogne becomes king, 1135.—Henry I. died in Normandy, and there was an end of all the peace and order that he had kept in his lands. There was no one now strong enough to keep the barons quiet. They all forgot the oaths which they had sworn to Matilda, and every one did what he pleased. Whilst everything was in confusion, Stephen, Count of Boulogne, the son of William the Conqueror's daughter Adela, persuaded the barons to choose him for their king.

Stephen was brave, and knew how to fight well, and he was generous and kindly, so that men readily loved him. All England chose him for king, and no one cared to fight for Matilda.

But though Stephen was a good soldier he did not



know how to keep order. Every one did as they pleased under his rule. The barons built themselves strong castles, and gathered many soldiers around them, and fought against one another. They used to go out from their castles to rob and steal and ill-treat the poor as they liked. The clergy tried hard to keep peace, but Stephen quarrelled with them, so that they wished Matilda to rule instead of him.

**War between Stephen and Matilda, 1139–1153.**—When Matilda saw what a weak king Stephen was she came to England, and the clergy and many others gathered round her, and she fought against Stephen. For fourteen years there was war between Matilda and Stephen. Sometimes one side gained a victory, and sometimes the other. Once Stephen was taken prisoner, but he was let go again in exchange for some other prisoners. Once Matilda was in Oxford, and Stephen's soldiers surrounded the town so closely that she feared lest she should be taken. It was winter, and the land was all flooded with water from the rivers. Matilda dressed herself in white, so that she might not be seen against the snow, and fled away by night over the frozen floods.

During all this time the barons went on with their wicked ways. Sometimes they fought for Matilda, sometimes for Stephen. They did not care for either of them, but they liked fighting and plunder and doing what they pleased, and were glad that there was no strong king to keep them in order. But the people suffered terribly. The barons forced them to work at their

castles ; they seized all who they thought had money or goods and put them in prison, and tortured them till they gave up all that they had. Many thousands died from hunger. Corn and cheese and butter grew so dear that few could buy them, for whilst all this plundering and fighting went on the land was not tilled. Many men fled from the country, and in their despair they said that Christ and His saints slept.

**Henry of Anjou comes to England; 1153.**  
—The only people who tried to make peace were the clergy, but they were not strong enough to do anything. At last when men were wearied with fighting and misery a man came to England who seemed able to bring peace again. This was Matilda's son Henry, who had just grown to be a man. He already had many lands in France. His father's death had given him Anjou, and from his mother he had Normandy, which Stephen had never been able to conquer. Besides this he had married Eleanor, a lady who owned Poitou and the great duchy of Aquitaine. So if you look at the map you will see that Henry held more of France than the King of France himself.

**Peace between Henry and Stephen, 1153.**  
—The clergy did all they could to bring Henry and Stephen to make peace. So at last they agreed that Stephen should be king as long as he lived, and that when he died Henry should be king. They also agreed about many things that were to be done at once to bring order into the land and lessen the people's sufferings.

Stephen died the year after peace had been made, and Henry became king, and was called Henry II.

Henry II. and his sons are called the *Angevin* kings, because Henry II.'s father was Geoffrey, Count of Anjou. From Geoffrey, too, they got the name Plantagenet. It had been given him on account of his habit of wearing a piece of broom, which in Latin is called *Planta genista*, in his helmet.

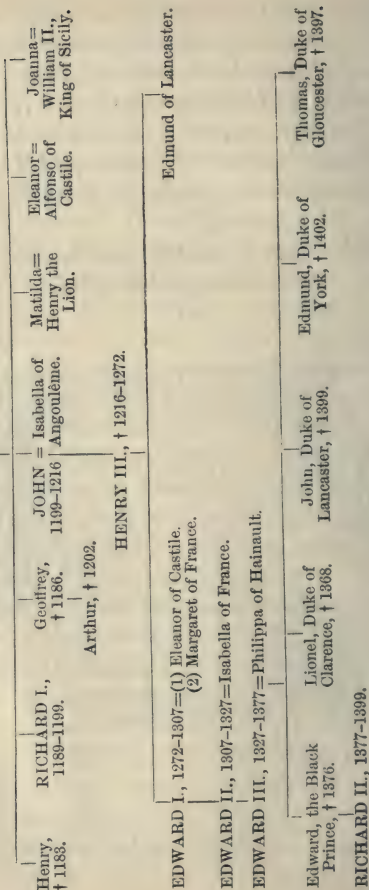
So with Henry II. begins a new family of kings, as he was only Norman through his mother.



GOING FOR MILK.—*Luttrell Psalter.*

## HENRY II. AND HIS DESCENDANTS.

HENRY II., 1154-1189=Eleanor of Guienne.



## CHAPTER VII.

### *THE ANGEVIN KINGS.*

Henry II. becomes king, 1154.—England rejoiced when Henry II. became king. The barons, the clergy, and the people were now all glad to have the long war at an end. The first thing that Henry II. had to do was to bring back order. He was very young to have such a difficult work to do, for he was only twenty-one when he was made king. But in spite of his youth he was very wise; he seems to have been born to govern and make laws; and what is very important for a king, he knew how to choose good servants who would serve him well.

Henry II. was a very busy man. He had such wide lands to rule over that if he would rule them well he must never rest. He was always at work, and never sat down except at meals or on horseback. Even his face was never at rest; his quick eyes seemed to watch what every one was doing. He was a stout man with a large round head and thick red hair. He did not care about fine clothes for himself, but he liked his court to be magnificent. He was very rough and passionate, for he felt deeply. Fortunately he wanted what was good for the people. He

wished to make all his wide lands in France and England into one strong kingdom, and to do this he must have peace and order. He had often to be away from England, and then his ministers ruled in his name. But he looked after everything himself, and saw that the English people had the good government they wanted, so that they might be contented. He gave the people a charter, as Henry I. had done, in which he promised to care for the rights of the people and govern them well.

**Thomas Becket becomes the King's favourite.**—Henry II. was young and gay and full of spirits, and he was pleased to find a young man like himself who was able to help him in all the hard work he had to do. This young man was called Thomas Becket, and was the son of a London merchant, and one of the archbishop's clerks. He was a very good man of business, and besides this he was tall and handsome, fond of all sorts of amusement, and very witty. The King and Becket became great friends. They worked hard together, and joked and laughed whilst they worked. They were more like friends and equals than like a king and his subject.

Once as they rode together through the streets of London on a cold winter's day they met a beggar all in rags. "Would it not be charity," said the King, "to give that fellow a cloak and cover him from the cold?" When Becket said "Yes," the King in jest pulled Becket's rich furred mantle from his shoulders in spite of his struggles and threw it to the beggar.

Becket loved fine clothes, and lived as grandly as a



prince. The doors of his house always stood open, and any man might feast at his table. The great nobles sent their sons to be brought up as pages in his house though he was only a merchant's son.

Henry II. and Becket worked hard to get everything into order again in England. The barons were made to pull down the strong castles they had built during Stephen's reign; and if they refused to do so when the King told them, he led his soldiers against them and made them obey.

Becket becomes Archbishop of Canterbury, 1162.—Six years after Henry II. became king the old Archbishop of Canterbury died. Henry II. wished to make his friend Becket archbishop. He thought that as they were such friends Becket would only care to please him and do as he liked. But when the King spoke to Becket about it, Becket said that if he were archbishop he would have to put God before the King. Still Henry II. was not afraid, and he made Becket archbishop. Then Becket became quite a different man. He no longer wore gay clothes and feasted every day, but he wore a hard shirt of haircloth next his skin, and he fasted and prayed much. He gave much money to the poor, and every night he washed the feet of thirteen beggars. The knights and the barons did not now feast at his table. In their place came learned clerks and priests, and whilst they ate, grave books were read aloud to them.

Henry II. and Becket quarrel, 1164.—Becket would not be one of the King's ministers

now that he was archbishop. He thought it right to care only for the things of the Church, and he did not spend his days with Henry as he used to. This vexed the King very much, and the two began to quarrel. Henry wished to get more power over the clergy, but Becket wanted things to stay as they were, and he would not have any of the changes that Henry wanted.

Then Henry II. held a great meeting of the clergy to talk about the changes he wished to make. When Becket found that all the other clergy were willing to do as Henry II. wanted he was at last persuaded to promise to do so too. Directly afterwards he was sorry that he had promised. He wrote to the Pope, who was the only person whom he thought he ought to obey, and asked him to forgive him and free him from his promise.

This made Henry II. very angry. Becket had many enemies, because he was a very proud man, and because men were jealous of his power and riches. His enemies were glad that the King was angry with him, and thought that now he was a ruined man. But Becket was brave, and had no fear of his enemies, for he was not afraid even to die for what he thought right.

**Becket flees from the land.**—Henry II. told all the bishops to meet together to judge the archbishop. Becket came proudly in before them carrying a silver cross. He told the bishops that it was wicked of them to judge him, as he was the head of all the English clergy, and he said, "I am to be judged only under God by the Pope." Then he arose

and walked slowly down the hall whilst they all murmured. Some even took up straws and threw them at him. But outside the people cheered him, for they loved him for his charity. That night Becket fled away secretly out of the land, as he felt that his life was not safe from his enemies. After a dangerous journey he reached France in safety. The King of France hated Henry II., so he was kind to Becket.

You see how often there were quarrels between the kings and the archbishops. It was because each wanted all the power for himself. The clergy thought that the King had no right to interfere in the things of the Church, and that the only person they need obey was the Pope. The King did not choose to have the Pope interfering in his country, where he wanted to be master in everything himself. Each side thought they were right, and would not give way.

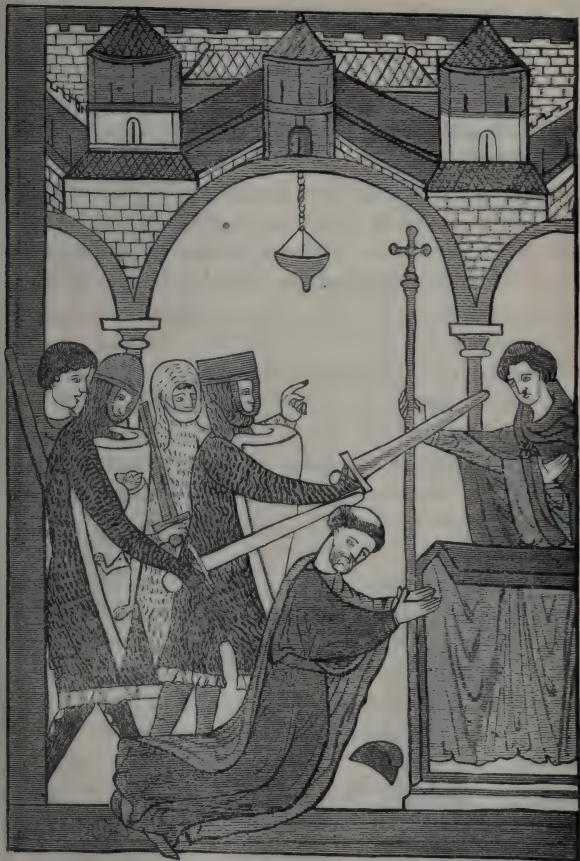
Just then the Pope could not do much to help Becket. For six years Becket stayed in France. At last Henry II. made peace with him again, and he went back to England. But Becket was as proud and obstinate as ever. The first thing he wanted to do when he got back to England was to punish the bishops who had dared to go against him.

Becket is murdered, 1170.—Henry II. was in France at the time; he was very angry when he heard what Becket had done. He flew into a terrible passion and cried out, "Is there none of my thankless and cowardly courtiers who will free me from the insults of one low-born and unruly priest?" He

hardly knew what he was saying, but four of his knights who heard him started off at once for England. They went to the archbishop's palace at Canterbury, and finding Becket in his chamber rated him with violent words. He only answered them proudly, and they rushed away shouting for their arms.

Becket's friends in terror made him flee to the cathedral. There the violent men followed him. It was growing dark, and they could not see him in the dim cathedral. They rushed in shouting, "Where is the traitor?" Becket turned towards them, saying, "Behold me, no traitor, but a priest of God." They tried to drag him from the church, but Becket clung to a pillar, and there the four men fell upon him. As he knelt on the steps that led to the choir they cruelly killed him with many blows whilst he prayed, "Lord, receive my spirit."

Henry II.'s sorrow for Becket's death. —All Europe was filled with horror at this cruel deed. Henry II. himself was deeply grieved and shocked that his passionate words had led to such a terrible result. He was frightened too lest the horror with which men looked on him because of Becket's murder should make him many new enemies. He humbly begged the Pope's pardon, and said that he was willing to suffer any punishment so that the Pope forgave him. When he came back to England he went to visit Becket's tomb, and walked three miles of the way with bare feet upon the stony road that he might show his penitence. Whilst he knelt at the tomb he bared his back and bade the monks scourge



THE MURDER OF THOMAS BECKET.  
*From an old Psalter (Harleian) in the British Museum.*



him. So the English people saw that the King was sorry, and they were ready still to stand firmly by him.

Henry II.'s enemies rise against him.—Henry II. was very glad to have the English people as his friends just then, for many enemies took this opportunity of rising against him. It was hardest of all for him that his own sons turned against him. His eldest son fled away to his father's chief enemy the King of France. Many of the great barons in England too rose against him, and the King of Scotland marched over the Border with an army.

The King did not lose heart when he had to fight against so many enemies, but showed how active he could be. His ministers and the English people were true to him, and one after another he put down his enemies. He did not treat them cruelly, so that they were ready to make friends with him when they saw that it was no use to fight against him.

Henry II. makes order in England.—Peace made it possible for Henry to go back to his work of bringing order into the government of the land. He did not let the barons have much power in the counties, but he made his own paid servants do all the work which had to be done, so that he was really master in everything. The English people learned more and more to feel that they were one nation, for there were the same laws for all parts of the country as well as for English and Normans. By this time the Normans and English had become mixed together. Many of the Norman barons had married English wives.



Men no more spoke of "*the Normans*," but both people together were called English. At the court French was spoken, and the laws and the learned books were written in Latin, but the people spoke English, and English books were written. Some Norman words got mixed up with the English language; and as time went on and our forefathers had much to do with the French and studied many Latin books, more and more French and Latin words were mixed up with the English and are still used. But the best English is that which has fewest of the foreign words and most of the real old English words.

In all that Henry did to make the government of the land more orderly, he kept to the old English customs. The people still felt that they had a voice in what was done, and were slowly preparing for the time when, as it is now, the people and not the king decide what shall be done for the good of all.

Henry II. conquers Ireland, 1166-1185.  
—Ireland now has the same government and the same queen as England, but it was not always so. Henry II. only ruled over England herself; Wales, Ireland, and Scotland had their own kings. At this time Ireland was in a very lawless state. There were many kings in the land, and they were always fighting against one another. One of these kings, Dermot, asked Henry II. to let some of his barons go over and help him in his wars. So Henry II. said that any might go who liked. Men in those days were so fond of fighting that many were glad to go and help

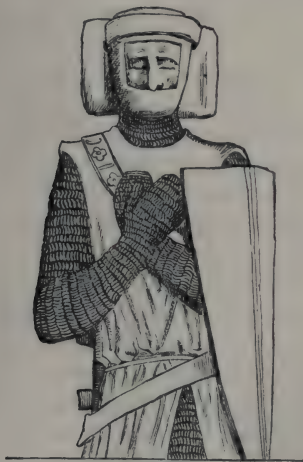
Dermot. One of those who went was the Earl of Pembroke, whom men called Strongbow, and he fought bravely and gained much power and many lands in Ireland.

Strongbow was afraid that Henry II. would not let him make himself a king in Ireland ; and to make sure that he might keep the lands that he had got, he promised to hold them in Henry's name and do him homage for them. Then Henry II. thought it would be wise for him to go to Ireland himself. He behaved as if he were king of the whole land, and stayed for some time in a palace made of reeds and palings that was built for him outside Dublin. He ordered castles to be built, and made many of the Irish kings and princes obey him, and gave away lands to his own followers. But he could not stay long enough to make Ireland entirely obey him.

After this Henry II. sent his youngest son John, whom he loved better than all his other sons, to rule Ireland in his name. But John did not know how to make friends with the Irish. He laughed at their rough dresses, pulled their long beards, and made rude jests at them. In a short while he made so many enemies that he had to be called back to England. But many English stayed in Ireland and went on conquering more lands for the English king.

Henry II. dies, 1189.—Henry II. always had a great deal of trouble with his sons. Two of them, Henry and Geoffrey, had died after spending their lives in plotting against their father. A third,

Richard, still helped the King of France to fight against his father. They got together a great army and marched into Henry II's lands in France, and Henry had to flee before them. He was old and ill, and fled before his son with sorrow and shame in his heart. But his sorrow was made still more bitter when



KNIGHT TEMPLAR.

he found that his favourite son John had joined his enemies. "Now," he said, "let things go as they will; I care no more for myself or for the world." They bore him on a litter to a safe place, and as he lay dying he cried out from time to time, "Shame, shame, on a conquered king!" At last he bade them carry

him before the altar of a chapel, and there his soul passed away. So died this great king, whom in spite of all his faults we must reverence, for he did much for the good of our land.

**Richard I. becomes king, 1189.**—After Henry II.'s death the elder of the two sons whom he left, Richard, became king without any difficulty. The only enemy he had to fear was his younger brother John, who wanted to be king himself. The King of France, who had helped Richard to plot against his father, was now willing to help John to plot against Richard. He had not really cared about Richard; all that he wanted was to trouble the King of England.

Richard I. was an active man like his father, but in other ways he was very different. He did not care to trouble about governing his people well and making wise laws; what he cared most about was fighting and trying to win glory for himself by his skill and bravery in battle. He came to England to be crowned, but he wanted to go away again as soon as possible to the Crusades. Men were still fighting in the East to win back the Holy Land from the Turks, and Richard I. was eager to go and gain glory there.

**Richard goes on the Crusade.**—All that Richard I. wanted from England was money to enable him to go to the wars. Whilst he was away his minister, William Longchamp, kept order, for he knew that unless there was order he could not get the money that the King wanted. Richard I.'s mother, Eleanor, tried to keep John from doing mischief, so at first after

Richard was away there was peace. But Longchamp's rule was harsh; and he not only got money for the King, but he got a great deal for himself and his relations, so that the people and the barons hated him. Once when Eleanor was away John found the people quite willing to help him to put down Longchamp, who had to give up his castles and flee. But new ministers were chosen, Eleanor came back, and John was not able to do as he liked.

**Richard I. is taken prisoner, 1192.**—Then news reached England that Richard I. on his way home from the Holy Land had been shipwrecked and afterwards had been thrown into prison by the Duke of Austria. He was not to be let out again till a very large sum of money was paid for his ransom. John hoped that now he would have things his own way; but the ministers, who had learned under Henry II. how to serve their king, struggled to get the money for the ransom together. When John tried by force to make himself master of the land, Hubert Walter, the chief minister and Archbishop of Canterbury, prevented him.

**Hubert Walter governs the land.**—When Richard I. got back to England John was sent out of the land, and those who had helped him were punished. Richard I. soon went away again and left the government to the care of Hubert Walter.

Hubert Walter was a wise and good man. He had grown up under Henry II., and had learned from him how to govern wisely. He had a difficult task, for Richard was always sending to him for money, and

Hubert Walter had to get it out of the people somehow. But he was just, and only used lawful means and kept peace.

**Richard I. dies, 1199.**—Richard never could get enough money. One day he heard that there was a rich treasure in the French castle of Chaluz, and so he went with his soldiers to try and take it. But the castle was very strong, and for some time Richard could not take it. One day as he rode round the walls an arrow struck him in the shoulder. It was a deadly wound, and the King lay dying when the castle was taken. They brought the man who had shot the arrow to his bedside; but Richard I. was always a generous man, and he forgave him before he died.

Richard I. had only spent a very few months of his reign in England. He was quite a stranger to his people, and had no care for their welfare; he only wanted their money. The English people felt proud when they heard of his brave deeds, but they could not love him, for he had never done anything for them.

**John becomes king, 1199.**—As Richard I. had no children his brother John became king after his death. John had always been a bad son and a bad brother, and he was not likely to be a good king. He was a cruel, cunning man, who cared for no one but himself, and had no love for his people.

The archbishop, Hubert Walter, did all he could to keep things from going wrong in England. John's mother, Eleanor, though an old woman of eighty, was a great help to him. Eleanor had not loved her husband,



Henry II., and had given him a great deal of trouble, but she loved her sons, and helped them as much as she could.

**Arthur of Brittany is murdered, 1203.**—The enemy whom John most feared was his nephew, Arthur of Brittany, son of his elder brother Geoffrey. Arthur claimed for his own some of John's lands in France. But John made war against him, and took him prisoner and had him taken to Rouen. After this no one ever heard anything of Arthur again, and men believed that he had been murdered by his uncle's command. This cruel act made the barons of Normandy and John's other lands in France quite willing to listen to Philip II., King of France, who wanted to get John's lands in France for his own.

**John loses Normandy, 1203.**—Queen Eleanor lay dying when she heard that Philip II. had marched with his troops into Normandy. From her deathbed she wrote to the Norman barons begging them to be faithful to John. But it was of no use. They did not care for John, and he did nothing to win them over. He did not even try to save Normandy, but fled to England without fighting a battle. Normandy was lost to England for ever about one hundred and fifty years after the Norman Duke William had conquered England. It was better for England that it should be so. The Norman barons who stayed in England now became really part of the English people, and the King was much more at home in England than he could be when Normandy belonged

to him too. He still had other lands in France, but they did not need so much attention as Normandy had done.

John quarrels with the Pope, 1205-1213.—Two years after the loss of Normandy John's faithful servant, Hubert Walter, died. Then there was a quarrel who should be the next archbishop, and the Pope was asked to decide the quarrel. There was a wise Pope at that time called Innocent III., and he chose a good man to be archbishop, Stephen Langton, who was an Englishman and a learned man. This was not what John wanted, and he grew very angry, and said he would never look upon Stephen as archbishop.

Innocent III. was determined to make John submit, so he laid England under an *interdict*. This means that he forbade all the clergy throughout the land to do any of the services of the Church. Only the baptism of children was allowed, and that in private. The dead might not be buried in the churchyards. The people suffered very much from the loss of all religious services. But John did not care for the sufferings of his people, and only grew more angry with the Pope.

This state of things went on for five years; some of the bishops fled from the country, and the people murmured loudly. When the Pope saw that John did not care for the interdict he *excommunicated* him. That means that he put him out of the Church, so that no Christian might have anything to do with him. But even for this John did not care. Then after the interdict had lasted four years the Pope said that John

was no longer king, and bade Philip of France lead an army against him.

This at last frightened John. He was a real coward, and when he was once frightened was willing to do anything he was asked. He took Stephen Langton as archbishop, and he even gave up his crown to the Pope, and took it back as a gift from him. He promised also to pay the Pope a fixed sum of money every year.

The people were not pleased at this. Though they honoured the Pope they did not like to see their land treated as if it belonged to him. They grew to dislike and distrust John more and more every day.



SOWING SEED.—*Loutrell Psalter.*

## CHAPTER VIII.

### *THE BARONS AGAINST THE KING.*

John quarrels with his barons.—One by one John's wise ministers had died. John made the people pay him a great deal of money, and ruled so harshly that at last the barons began to complain loudly.

John wanted to go and make war on Philip II. of France. When he called upon the barons to get their men together and make ready to follow him to the wars many of them refused. They said that though they must help him if war was made upon him in England, they need not follow him to other lands. This made John very angry, but he would not wait to punish the disobedient barons. He thought he would make war first against Philip, and when he had conquered him and won back Normandy he would come home to England and punish the barons.

John makes war on Philip II. of France, 1214.—Philip II. of France was a brave king; and though the Germans helped John to make war against him, he was not frightened at having so many enemies at once. His people, too, were willing to help him in the hour of danger. So he fought a

great battle at Bouvines in the north of France, and defeated an army made up of Germans and English. John was not there, but when he heard of this battle he gave up all for lost, and thought it was no good fighting against Philip any more.

The archbishop, Stephen Langton, helps the barons.—Whilst John was away the barons and the clergy met together in England to talk about what could be done to get good government in the land again. The archbishop, Stephen Langton, loved the people, and wanted to see them well governed. He reminded the barons of the charter which Henry I. had given the people in which he had promised to govern them well. Then the barons swore that if John would not give them a charter like this they would make war upon him till he did.

The clergy and the Archbishop Stephen quite agreed with the barons. John when he came home tried to win over the clergy to his side by making them all sorts of promises. But the archbishop wanted good government for everybody, and would not give up the people's cause.

The barons rise against John, 1215.—At last when the barons saw that John would give them nothing unless he was forced they got an army together and marched to London. The people gladly welcomed them. Before when the barons had risen against the King they had only wanted to get something for themselves, and then the people had kept to the King's side. Now the barons wanted what was

good for everybody, and so the people were on their side. Every one left John, and he saw that he must do as the barons wanted. He bade them come and meet him at Runnymede.

Runnymede was a meadow through which the Thames ran between Windsor and Staines. On one side of the river the barons with their soldiers around them put up their tents. The King was on the other side of the river. Messengers were sent from either side to meet on an island in the middle of the river and talk over the disputed points.

**John signs the Great Charter, 1215.**—John, now that he felt himself in danger, was ready to promise anything. Very likely he thought that as soon as the barons had gone back to their own homes he would be able to do as he liked again. In one day he agreed to the charter that the barons proposed and put his seal to it.

This charter is so important that it is always called the Great Charter. It was gained by every one, barons, clergy, and people joining together to make the King promise them good government.

The Great Charter was very like Henry I.'s charter, only there was more in it, because there were more things which had to be settled than there had been in the time of Henry I. The Great Charter did not say anything new, but it put clearly all the old rights of the English, and showed how the kings were bound to obey the laws and do justly as well as the people. It stated very clearly one great right of the people, to which they



have always clung from that day to this, that the king might raise no money from the people unless with the consent of the Great Council. It also said that no free-man could be taken and punished except by his peers or equals, or by the law of the land. This shows that the kings might not do as they liked either with the money or persons of their subjects.

**John makes war on the barons.**—John had signed and sealed the charter, but he did not mean to keep it. He went away from Runnymede and began at once to get an army together to fight against the barons; and he did a great deal of mischief, even burning and plundering the country, before the barons could stop him.

**John dies, 1216.**—At last the barons got Lewis, the son of the French king, to come and help them, and promised to make him their king. So Lewis came to England with an army, and the people were glad to welcome him. Whilst John was fighting against the barons and Lewis he was taken ill with a fever, brought on by fatigue and anxiety, and made worse because he ate too freely of peaches and new cider. He died, and no one mourned for him; but after his death the barons no longer wanted to have Lewis for their king. John had left a son Henry, who was ten years old, and men hoped that he would grow up to be a wise and good king. One of the best and wisest English barons, William, Earl of Pembroke, defended the cause of little Henry, who was crowned king as Henry III. After fighting a little while longer Lewis had to

give up all hope of becoming King of England and go back to France.

Hubert de Burgh governs the land, 1219–1232.—William of Pembroke was a wise old man who loved the people, so they trusted in him, but he died soon after he had made peace and driven away the French. After his death the land was governed by a minister called Hubert de Burgh, who had learned how to govern under Henry II. He was wise and strict, and brought order into the land; but men hated him for his strictness, and when Henry III. was old enough to govern for himself he drove Hubert away.

Henry III. governs the land, 1232.—Henry III. did not know how to govern, he was weak and foolish, and fond of doing as he liked. He was ready to make all kinds of promises which he never kept, so that men did not trust him. He did not care about the English barons, but he brought into the land a great many foreigners, relations of his wife and his mother, and he gave them great power and riches and castles. Henry III. was a very pious man too, and ready to do anything that the Pope liked. He let the Pope get as much money as he wanted out of the English clergy, so that clergy and people alike suffered from the foreigners.

The barons demand better government, 1258.—For more than twenty years things went on like this. Henry III. was always ready to make promises to the barons; he signed the Great Charter a great many times, and promised to keep it, but he always broke his promises. At last the barons

grew tired of listening to him, and determined to put things right themselves. Their leader was a great baron called Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, who had married the King's sister. Simon was a foreigner himself, but the King had quarrelled with him. Simon saw how the land suffered under the bad government of the King and his foreign friends, and he determined to help the English barons to make things better. In the midst of all these troubles we begin to hear the Great Council spoken of as *Parliament*, and the barons who met together in Parliament decided what could be done to bring back order. But though at first Henry promised to do as they wanted, he soon broke his promises again. The barons, too, were not so wise as they had been in John's reign. Earl Simon was a proud man with a violent temper, and though he was wise and wanted what was right, he did not always help to keep peace amongst the barons.

**The Barons' war against Henry III., 1263–1267.**—So it came about that the barons could not get what they wanted peacefully, and then they took up arms to fight against Henry III. Earl Simon was the leader of the barons' army, and he marched to meet the King, who was at Lewes with his army. But before he would fight, Simon sent messengers to the King to try once more and make peace. The King's son Edward was young and brave, and eager for the battle, and the King's brother Richard, Earl of Cornwall, urged him to fight. So Henry III. sent back an angry message to the barons, and on the morrow Earl Simon

drew up his army for the battle. The barons felt that they were fighting for a holy cause. An old writer tells us that they had only one thought, love of God and of their country, and that they did not fear to die for their cause. Earl Simon spent the night before the battle in prayer, and at sunrise he marched towards Lewes at the head of his men. When the King and his soldiers heard that they were coming they came out hastily to meet them. Henry III. was at the head of his army himself, and another part of the army was commanded by Edward.

The battle of Lewes is fought, 1264.—Edward was so angry with his enemies that he rushed against them with the greatest fury, and they fled before him. Then Edward forgot all about the rest of the battle, and followed for four miles those who fled before him, and slew many of them. But whilst Edward was away Earl Simon fought against the King, who had to flee for his life into a priory, whilst his brother Richard hid in a windmill. Edward came back too late to be of any use. Simon's soldiers crowded round the windmill and cried, "Come out, you bad miller!" and Richard was made a prisoner before the evening. Then Simon sent to propose to the King that peace should be made, and told him what the barons wanted. Henry promised them the good government for which they had been fighting, and Edward was given up as a prisoner into the hands of the barons till Henry should have made good his promises.

Earl Simon calls a Parliament, 1265.—Now Simon had all the power in his hands, and he began at once to put the land in order, and the King had to do whatsoever he bade him. Simon wanted every one to see that he was working for the good of the people, and doing the things which the people



PICTURE OF A MILL.—*Loutrell Psalter.*

wanted. So he called a Parliament to meet at Oxford, and this Parliament was more like the Parliaments we have now than any that had been before; for not only the great barons came to it, but besides, two knights from each shire and two men from each large town.

Not everybody agreed with Simon; the other great



barons thought that he had too much power, and many men thought that they would get more of their own way if Henry III. were to manage things again. But the King was too weak to be of any use against Simon; the only hope was to get Edward free again. He was a prisoner in the Castle of Hereford, but he was not watched very strictly. One day he said that he wished to try a new horse which had been given him, and went out to ride with his guards. He rode races with them till all their horses were quite tired out, and then he jumped on a fresh horse which had been kept ready for him, and rode away, crying out, "Good-day, my lords." He rode to a wood where some of his followers were hidden waiting for him. The horses of his guards were so tired that they could not catch him, and he reached a castle belonging to one of his friends in safety.

**Prince Edward wins the battle of Evesham, 1265.**—Then all who were discontented with Simon gathered round Edward. He got a great army together, and met Simon at Evesham. This time Edward was not overbold as he had been at Lewes, and when Earl Simon saw how well he led his troops to the battle he cried out, "They come on skilfully; it is not from themselves but from me that they have learned that order. Now let us commend our souls to God, for our bodies are our enemies'." He knew that it was a hopeless battle, for Edward had many more soldiers than he; so Simon tried to persuade those who stood round him to flee and leave him to his fate. But they would not, and said that they would stay and die with him.



They knew that there was no hope of victory, but they meant to die like brave men. Earl Simon, we are told, fought stoutly like a giant for the liberties of England. His followers were killed by his side, his horse was killed under him, but still he fought on wielding his sword with both hands. His enemies called on him to yield, but he cried that he would yield only to God; and so at last he was cut down, and one of his sons was slain too. Edward's followers treated Simon's body with scorn, but the people honoured him as their friend, and held him for a saint, and many songs were written in those days in his honour.

Henry III. dies, 1272.—After the death of Earl Simon the other barons were put down one by one and made to obey the King. Then Edward went away to the East to fight against the Turks, and his wife Eleanor, who was a Spanish lady, went with him. She was a good woman, and they loved one another very dearly. Once whilst they were in the East she saved his life. He was wounded in the arm by a poisoned arrow, but before the poison could do him any harm she sucked it out.

Whilst Edward was away his father Henry III. died. The barons and other chief men at once met together at Westminster and swore to obey Edward as their king. Till he came back three of the chief men took care of the government for him. As Edward heard that everything was going on peaceably in England, he did not hurry home, and paid many visits to foreign kings on his way.

**Edward I. comes back to England, 1274.**

—Edward was welcomed back to England with great joy. The people had long looked forward to having him for their king. They knew him to be brave and wise, and to have a loving heart, and he was tall and handsome, with golden hair and blue eyes, like a true Englishman. At last, after so many kings who had been more like foreigners than Englishmen, they had a really English king, who loved his own country more than anything else, and was not going to favour foreigners as his father had done. Though Edward had fought against Simon de Montfort, he had learned much from him. He had learned that there would never be peace unless the land were well and wisely governed, and he had seen all the evil that his father's bad rule had brought about. In his travels Edward had learned a great deal. He had tried to see all that he could of the world, and to learn what he could from others. Wise kings both in France and Spain were trying to bring order into their land by good laws and good government, and Edward had made up his mind to do the same in England.

**Edward I. conquers Wales, 1277-1283.**

—One of the first things that King Edward had to do was to put an end to the troubles that had been going on for some time in Wales. When the English people first came to Britain, the Britons whom they did not kill hid themselves in the mountains of Wales, and went on having kings and princes of their own, though the English kings had conquered much of their land.

In Earl Simon's wars Lewellyn, Prince of Wales, helped him against the King, and now Lewellyn refused to obey Edward, and sometimes came with his soldiers across the border and plundered the English lands. Edward saw that there could not be peace and order whilst this state of things lasted; so he made war on Lewellyn, and in a little while Lewellyn was crushed and had to promise to do as Edward wanted. But he only kept quiet for four years. Then his brother David stirred him up to make war on Edward again. Edward felt that there was nothing to be done but to destroy Lewellyn and make Wales part of England, and once more he marched his army into Wales. For some time Lewellyn and David managed to hold out against him, for they could hide away in the wild mountains where Edward could not get at them. The winter too came on, and Edward's soldiers suffered much from the frost and snow. But Edward was a true soldier and suffered with his men, and that gave them courage. Once when they were badly off for food, and one cask of wine had been saved for the King, he refused to drink it; for he said to the thirsty soldiers, "It is I who have brought you here, and I will not have better meat nor drink than you."

At last when Lewellyn ventured out from the mountains to plunder, he was surrounded and killed in battle. Soon after his brother David was taken prisoner and his head was cut off and sent to London. So the troubles in Wales were over. Edward called his son Edward, who had been born at Caernarvon Castle during

the war, "Prince of Wales," so that the Welsh might still seem to have a prince of their own, and since that time the king's eldest son has always been called the Prince of Wales. Edward I. ordered the government of the country very wisely, and ever afterwards Wales has been ruled by the English kings.



EFFIGY OF ROBERT OF NORMANDY.

## CHAPTER IX.

### *THE SCOTTISH WARS.*

How Edward I. governed the land.—One of the great difficulties which Edward I. had in governing England was to get money. His father, Henry III., had been very careless. He had given away all he could get to his favourites, and the different ways in which he tried to force people to give him money had been one of the chief reasons why the barons rose against him. Edward I. loved power, and though he did not want to waste money, he wished the people to give him what he needed. But when they would not do as he wanted he was wise enough to see that he must give way, and not try to get money out of the country unless Parliament consented. The Great Charter had settled this, but the kings had not always cared to keep to the Charter. In Edward I.'s reign at last it was clearly settled that the king could not force the country to pay him money without the consent of Parliament, and it has remained so to this day. This is one of the chief reasons for the power of Parliament; for if the king does not do the things that Parliament wants, it can refuse to give him any

money. So little by little the kings of England learned that they must try and govern the land in the way that Parliament wished.

**How Parliament was made up, 1295.**—As Parliament had to settle what money was to be got out of the country, it was just that there should be men in Parliament who came from every class of the people. Simon de Montfort had bidden two burgesses come from the chief boroughs or towns to his Parliament, and now Edward I. did the same. The towns were growing big, and the burgesses did much business, and made a great deal of money; so Edward I. hoped to get plenty of money from them. In the year 1295 Edward I. held a Parliament, which was very like the Parliaments we have now, for there came to it all the great barons and the chief clergy, who now sit in the House of Lords, and besides, two knights from every shire and two burghers from the chief boroughs, who now sit in the House of Commons. That Parliament was a model for all after Parliaments, and in the days of Edward I. the way in which England is now governed was settled.

**How money was raised by Parliament.**—The money which the king needed was got together in different ways, as Parliament thought wisest at the time. In the time of Edward I. England was rich in sheep. Englishmen did not make the wool into cloth, but used to sell it to other countries, chiefly to Flanders, where there were clever weavers who made beautiful cloth. When the king wanted money Parliament ordered that the people who sold wool should pay



a certain sum of money to the king on all the wool they sold ; this was called a tax. Other things besides wool were taxed when it was necessary. Sometimes, too, the landowners were bidden to pay to the king a thirtieth or a fortieth part of what they got from their land. So in many different ways Parliament settled how the money which the king needed was to be got.

Edward I. wanted above all things to have his country well governed. Whenever he was not busy with war he tried to improve the laws of the land. He saw what was best for his people, and though he would have liked to have everything his own way, when he saw that the people were stronger than he, he gave way. If he had once said that he would do a thing, he kept to it ; so that men trusted in him.

Edward I. decides that John Baliol should be King of Scotland, 1292.—Edward I. had added Wales to his kingdom ; some years afterwards he hoped that it might be possible to add Scotland too. He seems to have felt that England could never be great and have true peace unless the whole island was one, and had but one king. The King of Scotland, Alexander III., had died and left only an infant grand-daughter, who died soon after him. Then many different men arose who said that they had a right to be King of Scotland, because they were related to the last kings. After disputing for some time, they asked Edward to judge between them and say which ought to be king. So Edward met them at Berwick, and

when he had listened patiently to all they had to say, he chose one of them, John Baliol, to be king.

Edward I. hoped that Baliol would be obedient to him and follow his wishes. But when Baliol was once king he did not care about Edward I., and the Scots grew angry with the English king for interfering in their affairs. They made friends with Edward I.'s enemy, the King of France, and they came across the border into England and plundered the land.

**Edward I. makes war on Scotland, 1296.**—So Edward I. led a mighty army to the north. First he took Berwick, and he was so angry that he allowed his soldiers to kill the townsfolk of Berwick with the sword. Then the priests came to Edward I. bearing the bread and wine of the Sacrament, and begged him have mercy on the town. Edward I.'s heart was really kind, and at the words of the priests his anger left him, and he burst into tears and bade his soldiers leave their bloody work.

From Berwick Edward passed on into Scotland, and none dared fight against him. Baliol became a prisoner and was sent to England, and Edward I. drew up a plan how Scotland should be governed. He ordered everything wisely and well, and treated no man harshly.

**William Wallace fights against the English, 1297-1298.**—But the Scots did not like to have an English king, and were discontented about many things. A knight called William Wallace got together a band of fearless men to free their land from the English. The discontented Scots gathered round

Wallace, till at last he was at the head of a big army and drove the English governor of Scotland across the border. Then Edward I. came north again himself with the biggest army he had ever led into the field. He met Wallace and his army at Falkirk. The Scots fought nobly for their country, but the English were too strong for them. The English bowmen sent their arrows amongst the enemy with such true aim that the Scots fled before them, and the English knights on horseback followed and slew them without mercy. Wallace himself escaped from the field, but his army was destroyed.

Once more Edward I. wisely ordered the government of Scotland. He showed mercy even to the Scots who had fought against him. Only Wallace was cruelly treated. He was caught and taken to Westminster, and put to death as a traitor.

**Robert Bruce fights against the English.**  
—For a little while there was peace in Scotland. But soon a new man arose to fight for his country. He was called Robert Bruce, and his grandfather had been one of those who claimed the crown of Scotland when Edward gave it to Baliol. Edward had always treated Bruce as a friend, and asked his advice how to rule Scotland. But Bruce fled away from the English court, and had himself crowned King of Scotland. He was quite alone with few to help him, and had to hide himself in the Highlands. The anger of Edward I. was roused, and those who helped Bruce were treated with cruelty. Bruce, when he heard how

5

his friends were punished, was filled with despair. One morning early he was lying on a wretched bed in a poor hovel, thinking that he had best leave Scotland for ever, when he saw a spider begin to spin its web in the beams over his head. Six times the insect tried in vain to swing itself to the next beam. When Bruce saw how it went on trying, he was filled with admiration. "If it tries a seventh time," he thought, "I will try again to win the crown." Just as he thought this the spider tried again, and succeeded. This gave Bruce courage, and he rose ready to fight on till he won.

Edward I. dies, 1307.—Edward was growing old and feeble, but he once more led an army to Scotland. He never reached it, for, weary with the labours of his long life, he died before he reached Scotland, whilst camped with his army at the marsh of Burgh, in Cumberland.

Robert Bruce wins Scotland.—When Edward I. died, his son, Edward II., became king. Bruce knew that Edward II. was not brave and wise like his father, and he hoped that things would go better with him now. But the English were still strong in Scotland, and for three years Bruce had to stay hidden in the mountains. He had a few faithful followers with him, and many were their dangers and difficulties, for their enemies hunted them even with bloodhounds. But in spite of danger Bruce was always brave and cheerful, and his courage and his kindness made the Scots love him. Little by little

the Scottish barons grew willing to help him. He gained some of the chief towns, till Edward II. thought he must make a great effort to put him down.

**Bruce wins the battle of Bannockburn, 1314.**—At the head of a splendid army Edward II. marched to Scotland. Bruce got together all the men he could to lead against him, but his soldiers were mostly on foot. He was trying to take Stirling, and Edward II. led his army to drive him away from before the town. Bruce had many fewer soldiers than Edward II., and their arms and their horses were not nearly so good as those of the English troops. But Bruce was a far more skilful general than Edward II. He posted his men on a plain near a little stream called Bannockburn. To get at him Edward II. would have to lead his army through rough boggy land. Then Bruce bade his men dig in front of them rows of pits about as deep as a man's knee, they were filled with brushwood and covered over with turf so that no one could see them. Besides this, he caused steel pikes to be scattered about the places which the English horsemen were likely to ride over, hoping by this means to lame some of the horses.

Bruce told his men that he meant to win the battle or die, and begged all those to leave the army who were not determined to do likewise. When the English were seen coming near to attack, the Scots knelt down to pray God to give them victory. When Edward II. saw them he cried out, "They kneel down, they are asking for forgiveness." "Yes," said one of his barons,

“but they ask it from God, not from us ; these men will conquer or die upon the field.”

Edward II. bade his men begin the battle, and the archers bent their bows and shot so that their arrows fell like flakes of snow at Christmas-time. But Bruce was prepared for them ; he sent a body of mounted soldiers at full gallop among the archers, and as they had no other weapons but bows and arrows, and could not fight hand to hand, they were cut down in great numbers by the Scottish horsemen and thrown into confusion.

Then the English horsemen came up, but as they rode over the ground which was dug full of pits, the horses fell into the holes, and the riders lay tumbling about and could not rise, so heavy was their armour. Bruce had sent all the useless servants in his army behind a hill, and these men, seeing the confusion the English were in, thought they would come out to get their share of the victory. When the English saw them come suddenly over the hill, they thought it was a new Scottish army, and losing all heart, turned to fly from the field. Edward II. fled to England, and only with difficulty escaped being taken prisoner.

After this Robert Bruce was safe on his throne. Edward II. had to make a truce with him, which means that they agreed that for a certain time there should be no fighting between England and Scotland.

**How Edward II. governed England.**—Edward II. was not at all like his father, Edward I. He took no trouble to rule his country well ; all he cared



for was to amuse himself and spend his days in pleasure. The money which Parliament gave him he spent foolishly, and instead of choosing wise men to govern the land he chose foolish young men like himself, who only cared for pleasure. To these favourites he gave away money and lands, and at last Parliament saw that it was no good giving him money, for he only wasted it. Edward II.'s wife, Queen Isabella, was a very proud woman, and she grew angry at Edward II.'s folly; and at last a nobleman called Roger Mortimer planned to take away the crown from him. In the year 1327 Parliament decided that Edward II. was not fit to be king any longer. After he had reigned for twenty years he was put in prison in Berkeley Castle, and his son, Edward III., was made king in his stead.



TOMB OF A CRUSADER, JOHN OF ELTHAM, SON OF EDWARD II.,  
FROM WESTMINSTER ABBEY, A.D. 1394.

## CHAPTER X.

### *EARLY YEARS OF EDWARD III.*

Queen Isabella and Mortimer rule in England, 1327-1330.—Edward III. was only fourteen years old when he was made king, so his mother, Isabella, and her favourite, Mortimer, ruled the land ; but they ruled it very badly, for they only cared to get riches and power for themselves, and they did not care for the good of the people. They treated poor Edward II. very cruelly, and at last Mortimer, who was afraid lest Edward should be made king again, had him murdered in Berkeley Castle

The Scots make war on England, 1327.—When King Robert of Scotland saw how badly things were being managed in England, he did not care to keep the truce any longer ; so he led his men over the border into England. The Scots were bold soldiers who feared no hardships. They did not carry baggage and provisions with them to make themselves comfortable. Each man only took with him a bag of oatmeal, which he fastened behind him on his horse. They caught and killed the English cattle, and cooked them when they were hungry, and made cakes of their oat-

meal to eat with the meat. For drink they were content with the water from the streams, and did not trouble to carry wine. So in this way they could go where they liked, through mountain paths and over the wild moors of Northumberland.

When the English army came against them they could not get near them, for the English knights with their heavy armour and their baggage could not move quickly over the hills where there were no roads. No battle was fought, and at last a peace was made between England and Scotland, by which the English agreed that Robert Bruce should be King of Scotland.

**Mortimer is killed, 1330.**—Edward III. was too young at first to interfere with anything that Isabella and Mortimer did. He was married when he was very young to a good and beautiful princess, Philippa of Hainault, and when he was only seventeen he already had a son. The thought that he was a father helped to make him ashamed of being treated like a child by Isabella and Mortimer. Many people in England were discontented with them for their bad government and the way in which they had lost Scotland after Edward I. had won it. So Edward III. joined with the discontented people and made a plot to get rid of Mortimer.

The Queen and Mortimer heard something of what was going on, and kept Edward III. with them in Nottingham Castle. But he managed to get a body of armed men into the castle through a secret passage at midnight. They broke into the room where Mortimer

was and seized him in spite of his struggles. Isabella burst in from the next room, and with bitter tears cried out, "Fair son, fair son, oh spare the gentle Mortimer!"

But it was in vain; soon afterwards Mortimer was tried before Parliament and hanged, and Queen Isabella was not allowed to have anything more to do with the government.

**Edward III. fights in Scotland, 1333.**  
—After this Edward III. was really king; he was young and brave, and he loved glory. Before everything else he wished to show the Scots that there was again a king in England who would make them obey him. King Robert was dead, and his son David was a mere child. This made Edward Baliol, the son of the Baliol whom Edward I. had made king, try to get the throne for himself. Poor little David Bruce had to fly to France to save his life. Then Edward III. told Baliol that he would let him be king if he would do him homage as his vassal. Baliol promised to do as Edward III. wanted, and this made the Scots very angry, for they wanted their king to do as he liked without caring for the English king. So they turned against Baliol and drove him from the throne. Then Edward III. marched with an army into Scotland to help Baliol, and he gained a battle over the Scottish rebels at Halidon Hill, near Berwick. He took Berwick too, and kept it for his own, and it belonged to the English kings ever afterwards.

Edward III. made Baliol King of Scotland again. But the Scots were discontented. They wanted a real

king, not a king who was Edward III.'s vassal. So they asked the King of France to help them to drive away Baliol and make David Bruce king. The King of France, Philip VI., was quite willing, for he hated the English king because he owned rich lands in France which the French king wanted for himself.



TREFOIL PEDIMENT WITH AN ARMED KNIGHT AND HORSE, FROM THE  
TOMB OF AYLMER DE VALENCE IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

## CHAPTER XI.

### *THE FRENCH WARS.*

Edward III. makes war on the King of France, 1337.—When Edward III. saw that as long as the French king was willing to help the Scots there could be no hope of peace in Scotland, he determined to make war on Philip VI. He was very willing to fight, for he was young and full of strength, and longed to win glory. The English were proud of their young king, and wished him to show the world how strong and brave he was, and what a rich land he ruled over. So they were quite ready to give him all the money he needed. The King and the people began the war joyfully, and everything looked well for them. But the war they thus began lasted a hundred years, and was a sad war for England in the end, as we shall see.

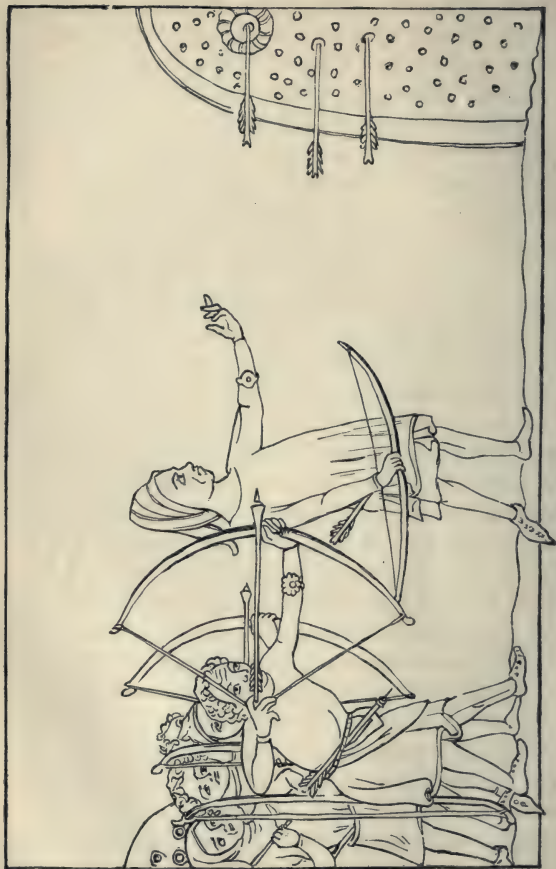
As one of the reasons for making war, Edward III. pretended that he ought to be King of France, as he was more nearly related to the last king than Philip VI. was. And after a time he even called himself King of France as well as King of England, and the kings after him till George III. did so too, as you may see on their coins.



**The English win the battle of Sluys, 1340.**—During the first years of the war nothing much was done, but Edward III. wasted a great deal of money. He loved splendour, and liked his armies to be very magnificent, and he gave rich presents to foreign princes to make them friendly to him. The first real battle was fought at sea, near Sluys. The English, as an island-folk should be, were very clever sailors and very fearless at sea, and they fought well at Sluys, and destroyed the French ships. So England showed herself to be, as she has always been since then, the mistress of the seas ; and no other country has ever had such good ships or such brave sailors as England.

**Edward III. prepares to invade France.**—After this battle there was no fighting for some years, but Edward III. was busy making ready to lead a splendid army into France. Parliament gave him plenty of money, for the people were not tired of war yet, and Edward did all he could to get soldiers as well as splendid knights for his army. Particularly he took care to have a great many archers, for the English were very clever at shooting with the bow and arrow. It was the favourite amusement of the people on Sundays and holidays to meet together and shoot at a mark for prizes.

Edward III. took his son, Prince Edward, who was now sixteen years old, with him to France that he might learn to fight. The French king did not know where Edward was going to land, and there was no French army to meet him. So Edward III. marched against many towns, and they had to open their

SHOOTING AT THE BUTTS.—From *Loutrell Psalter*.

gates to him, and his soldiers plundered them and gained quantities of gold and silver, and rich stuffs, which were sent back to England in the ships.

Edward III. marched on through France almost to the walls of Paris, burning and destroying everything on his way. The poor French peasants, when they saw their corn destroyed and their cottages on fire, cried out in despair, "Where is Philip our king?"

The battle of Cressy is fought, 1346.—But Edward III. thought too much of plundering, and did not make his plans like a clever general. His soldiers grew tired and ill from marching so much, and at last Philip VI. got his army together and was ready to fight Edward. He marched very cleverly and got between Edward and the sea, so that Edward could not get back to his ships without fighting the French. Then Edward camped his army on the hills near a little village called Cressy, and waited for Philip VI. to come and fight. He had not so many soldiers as Philip, but he knew that his men were brave, and he was not afraid.

The soldiers polished and mended their arms to be ready to fight, and Edward gave a great feast to all the earls and barons in his army, and they were all cheerful and full of courage. Edward did not forget to pray to God to help him in the battle, and on the morning before the fight all the army held solemn prayers.

When all the men were put in order Edward rode round to them on a white horse and bade them fight bravely. He spoke to them so sweetly and so cheer-

fully that all were comforted by seeing and hearing him. Then the French army came in sight.



CROSSBOWMEN AND ARTILLERY IN FOURTEENTH CENTURY.

The French came upon the English with great shouts, hoping to frighten them. But the English

stood quiet till the French came near enough, and then the archers answered the shouts with a terrible shower of arrows. So the battle began. One part of the English army was commanded by Edward, the King's son, and he and his men were soon in the thickest of the fight. There seemed such terrible numbers of French soldiers that some grew afraid lest the young Edward and his men should be destroyed. So a knight rode quickly to ask King Edward to come and help him. But the King asked, "Is my son dead or unhorsed, or so badly wounded that he cannot help himself?" "Nay, thank God," answered the knight, "but he is in so hot a struggle that he has great need of your help." Then the King said, "Let the boy fight on, for if it please God, I wish that all the glory of the day be given to him."

So Edward III. went on watching the fight from a windmill on the hill behind the battle-field. He saw how bravely Prince Edward and his men pressed on, and how the French were killed by hundreds by the English archers, till at last they fled from the field on all sides. When evening drew on, his barons at last persuaded King Philip to leave the battle, and he fled away to Paris.

Then the battle was over and the English had won, chiefly because their archers shot so cleverly. King Edward came down from the windmill and hastened to his son. He took him in his arms and kissed him, saying, "My fair son, God give you grace to go on as you have begun." At this battle Prince

Edward is said to have worn black armour, and so he was always afterwards called the Black Prince.

**King Edward besieges Calais, 1346.**—After the battle of Cressy there was no French army for Edward to fear, and he marched to Calais to try and take it. Calais is on the sea-shore, and Edward III. wanted very much to capture it, for many pirate ships used to sail from it to plunder the English trading ships.

Calais was a very strong town, and Edward could not break into it by force; he camped his army all round it, so that no man could go in or out of the town. He made wooden houses for his men to lodge in, that they might wait comfortably till the poor people in Calais had eaten all the food they had in the town.

**The battle of Nevil's Cross is fought, 1346.**—Whilst he waited before Calais, Edward heard that England had been in great danger. For David Bruce had got back to Scotland, and had led a brave army of Scots into England. He hoped to do the English much harm, for he knew that Edward III. was away in France with all his knights. But the English managed to get an army together; even clergymen were ready to fight in it to save their country from ruin. Queen Philippa is said to have rode amongst the men speaking kind and cheering words, and urging them to fight bravely for their country and their king. They answered with loud shouts. They met the Scots on a moor called Nevil's Cross, near Durham. There the Scottish horsemen got entangled amongst hedges, whilst the English archers sent their arrows amongst



them. The bravest Scottish knights were killed or fell from their horses. David Bruce was too brave to flee ; he was taken prisoner, and brought to London and shut up in the Tower. So England was safe again from the Scots.

The taking of Calais, 1347.—After Edward III. had been before Calais for eleven months, the poor people in the town began to suffer so terribly from hunger that they sent to ask Edward III. whether if they opened the gates to him he would spare their lives. But Edward hated the men of Calais, and he sent back a harsh answer, saying that he would only show them mercy if six of the chief burghers would give themselves up to him with ropes round their necks and the keys of the town in their hands.

When the governor of the town heard the King's answer he rang the great bell to make all the people come into the market-place, and told them what Edward III. had said. Then they wept and lamented till one of the richest burghers, called Eustace de St. Pierre, arose and said, "It would be a very great pity to let so many people die from hunger. I will be the first of the six." Five others were soon found willing to die for their fellow-citizens, and the six went out to Edward III. amidst the tears and blessings of the citizens. They were led to the King's tent and fell upon their knees begging his mercy. But Edward was stern and angry, though his barons wept at the sight. At last Queen Philippa threw herself on her knees and begged him for the love he bore her to spare those men.

Then Edward looked silently at her for a while, and at last he said, "Ah lady, I wish you had been elsewhere, but I cannot refuse you; I give them to you to do as you please." Then every one was glad, and the Queen feasted the six citizens in her tent and sent them back to Calais with rich gifts.

After this Calais belonged to the English for many years, and was a useful port for their ships.

**Edward III. goes back to England, 1347.**—Edward III. went back to England in triumph. The country was proud of their king and of his victories. England grew rich with all the splendid plunder brought home from France. People forgot their old simple habits, they wore fine French clothes and learned to care more and more about feasts and amusements. Edward III. kept a splendid court; he gave great feasts to his knights, when the tables were covered with gold and silver dishes, and the King and Queen and the princes were dressed in embroidered robes of gold and velvet. The barons tried to be as splendid as the King, and the whole land seemed given up to pleasure.

**The Black Death scourges the land, 1348, 1349.**—In the midst of all this jollity great trouble came upon England. A fearful plague came from Asia to Europe, and thousands died of it in France and Germany and Italy. At last it reached England too, and spread so rapidly that half of the people died of it. Men were filled with terror; they fled from one another, husbands leaving their wives, and mothers their children, when they were seized

with the plague. So many labourers died that there were not enough left to till the fields; food grew very dear and scarce, and the sheep and oxen



NOBLEMEN'S COSTUMES IN FOURTEENTH CENTURY.

wandered half-wild over the country with no one to tend them.

There was no talk of war, for both France and England had suffered too much by the plague. But after a while things looked better again. The rich

forgot the plague and went back to their old amusements, only the people suffered from the dear food.

**The battle of Poitiers, 1356.**—Soon the French war began again. The Black Prince had been sent to Bordeaux as governor of Gascony, a province that belonged to the English kings. To gain plunder he marched an army into one of the richest parts of France, where the people had lived in peace for many years. There were no French soldiers to stop him. Wherever he went he burned and plundered till five hundred towns and villages were smoking in ruins, and the name of the Black Prince became a terror to the French. Then he marched back to Bordeaux laden with wealth, and spent the winter in feasting and jollity with his knights and the Gascon lords.

Next summer the Black Prince led his men again into another part of France to plunder and burn. Philip VI., King of France, was dead, and his son John ruled in his stead. John got an army together and marched to catch the Black Prince, and he got between the Prince and Bordeaux. John had an army of 50,000 men and the Prince had only 8000. But the Prince was brave and fearless; when he saw that he must either become John's prisoner or fight, he posted his men very cleverly on a little hill near Poitiers and waited till the French should come and attack him.

The French king camped near with his splendid army, who were eager to destroy the English Prince and his handful of soldiers. The Black Prince spoke bravely to his men, and bade them fight well and know no fear.

Then kneeling down alone he prayed to God to help him in his need.

To get at the English on the hill the French had to march up a narrow lane with high hedges on each side. Behind the hedges the Black Prince had hidden some of his archers, and when the French knights came riding fearlessly up the lane, a terrible flight of arrows fell upon them from behind the hedges. The French horses were frightened and wounded by the arrows and would not go on, and the English soldiers rushed upon the French and drove them back upon the rest of their army. Showers of arrows went after them, and the English archers shot so swiftly and so well that the French knew not where to turn to escape their arrows. The whole French army was thrown in such disorder that they grew confused and lost heart, and many began to fly from the field. King John fought bravely to the last, and would not fly, so he was taken prisoner and brought to the Black Prince's tent. The battle was over, the French were flying from the field, and the Black Prince was resting in his tent and drinking wine. When the French king was led in he greeted him most kindly, bade him have comfort, and himself served him with wine. All the stores of food and rich clothes and jewels and vessels of gold and silver which the French had brought with them fell into the hands of the English, and they had so many prisoners they did not know what to do with them.

That evening the Prince gave a great supper in his tent, and made King John sit at the chief table and



waited upon him himself, speaking kind and cheering words to him. Next day they started on their way to Bordeaux, where the townspeople came out to welcome them with shouts and rejoicing.

**The Black Prince returns to England, 1357.**—After a while the Black Prince sailed away to England, taking King John with him. They were welcomed in London with great rejoicings. The Black Prince rode into the city mounted on a little black horse, whilst King John rode at his side on a splendid white horse. All the people of London turned out to meet them, and the streets were hung with tapestry and flags. King Edward greeted John very kindly, and held a great feast in his honour, and gave him a palace to live in.

**Charles V. becomes King of France, 1364.**—France suffered great misery whilst King John was in England. His son tried to keep things in order, and at last made peace with Edward III. and promised to pay a very large sum of money to ransom his father. So after being a prisoner for four years John was able to go back to France. One of his sons came to be a prisoner in his stead till the ransom was paid. He was treated very kindly, and allowed to go about as he liked. So growing tired of England, he one day escaped to France. King John was so ashamed that his son should have behaved so badly, that he came back of his own accord to England to be a prisoner again. He died in England very soon after, and his son Charles became King of France in his stead.



**The Black Prince fights in Spain, 1367.**—After a while the Black Prince went back to Gascony. He lived very splendidly at Bordeaux, but he did not rule very wisely. He mixed himself up in a quarrel between Pedro, King of Castile, which was a part of Spain, and his subjects. Pedro was a bad king, and it was foolish of the Black Prince to help him. He led an army into Spain, and won a great battle, and put Pedro on the throne again. But Pedro did not give him any of the money which he had promised him, and the Black Prince came back from Spain very ill in health and very disappointed with Pedro.

**The Black Prince has to leave Gascony, 1371.**—The Black Prince had wasted all his money, and tried to get more in unwise ways. This made his French subjects discontented with him, and they complained to Charles V., King of France, and asked him to help them.

Charles V. was very glad to do so, as he very much wanted to win from the English the lands they held in France. So the war began again. The Black Prince was so ill that he could not do much to stop the French, who marched into his lands. He tried being carried in a litter at the head of his men, but he grew so much worse that his doctors told him he must go back to England. With a sad heart he sailed away from Bordeaux, leaving his brother, John of Gaunt, to manage things in France. John of Gaunt was so called because he was born at Ghent in Flanders.

After this things went very badly for the English.

Edward III. was an old man, and had grown very feeble and foolish, and could not take care of things himself. In France John of Gaunt lost little by little all the lands which belonged to the English, and at last he had to make a truce with the King of France and come back to England.

**John of Gaunt tries to get power in England, 1376.**—John of Gaunt was not a good general, but he was a very clever man. Now that his father, Edward III., was old and feeble, and his brother, the Black Prince, worn out with sickness, he was the chief man in England, and he wished to have everything his own way. Things were in a very troubled state in England. The extravagance of the King and the barons had made the country poor again, and the people were discontented at having to pay taxes when they saw how the money was wasted, and how badly the war was managed in France. They grew very angry with John of Gaunt for the way in which he governed the land, and we see how much power Parliament had now got by the way in which it tried to put things right.

The barons and the men who came to Parliament from the counties and the towns did not now all sit together in Parliament. The barons and the chief clergy kept together, and were called the Upper House, or House of Lords, whilst the others were called the Lower House, or the Commons. The Commons made a long list of complaints against the bad government, and had some of the King's officers punished. This

Parliament was called the Good Parliament because men liked what it did. The Black Prince, though he was ill and weak, did all he could to help the Parliament, for he loved the people. But whilst the Good Parliament was still sitting his sufferings came to an end and he died, and the people mourned much for him.

Next year Edward III. died too, and the Black Prince's son Richard became king.

**Trade and manufacture flourish in England.**—The war with France had at first seemed to bring England only riches and victories; but now that things had gone badly with the English in France, people began to suffer from the great losses caused by this long war. Still in Edward III.'s reign England grew to be a richer country than she had ever been before. The good government which Edward I. had set up gave the people peace at home, so that they were able to busy themselves with trade and manufacture. The chief thing which England sent to other lands in those days was wool. English ships carried the wool to Flanders, where it was made into cloth; and in Flanders the English merchants met merchants from many other lands, and from them they could get the things they needed in exchange for their wool. Flemish weavers, too, had come over to England, and taught the English how to weave their wool into cloth. The eastern counties, the part of England nearest Flanders, were covered with busy towns and villages where the weavers worked at their looms.

Edward III. took a great deal of interest in trade, and made many laws which he thought would make trade easier. He was careful to keep his ships in good order, so that they might sail about the seas round England and drive away the pirates who wanted to rob the English merchant ships.

**Geoffrey Chaucer, 1340-1400.**—For a long while after the Normans came to England French had been the language spoken at the court and by all people of importance. But now English began to be much more common, and people began to write books in English again. One of the greatest of English poets, Geoffrey Chaucer, lived in Edward III.'s reign, and he wrote his poems in English. They are mostly pleasant stories about knights and ladies, and people were very fond of reading them, and that helped to make the knights and ladies like to talk English instead of French. Chaucer is very interesting to us too, for he tells us much that helps us to understand the kind of people that lived in his day, and what they did; and he is so kindly and merry, and fond of a joke, and tells his stories so pleasantly, that all must honour and love him as the first great English poet.

**John Wiclif translates the Bible, 1380.**—Till this time the people had been content to have their Bible only in Latin, and not to read it for themselves, but to know it only from what the priests told them about it. But John Wiclif, a wise and learned priest, thought that every one ought to read the Bible for himself, and so he turned the Bible into English that

all might understand it. Chaucer's poems and Wiclif's Bible helped very much to make our English language what it is, and to teach the people who lived in England to like speaking English better than French.

Wiclif was a good man, and was sad when he saw the wicked lives which some of the priests led in those days; for many priests and bishops too thought only about hunting and eating and drinking and amusements, and forgot that they ought to teach people the Word of God. So Wiclif, and others who thought like him, taught the people to search the Scriptures for themselves, and bade them listen only to good priests. Those who thought like Wiclif were called Lollards, which comes from an old word that we still use in "lullaby" and meant chatterers, because they preached so much. As there were a good many of them they grew very busy in trying to make things better, both in the government of the land and of the Church. Wiclif himself was wise and careful; but many of the Lollards were very wild in the things they taught, particularly after Wiclif's death, and this made sober people afraid of them.

Richard II. becomes king, 1377.—When Richard II., the Black Prince's son, became King of England he was only eleven years old, and the government was managed by his mother, the Princess of Wales, and some of the great men of the land.

Richard II. had many uncles, the sons of Edward III., who were all rich and powerful, because they had married rich English wives, and they were all very

eager to get power for themselves. At first John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, was the one who had the most power. It was not very easy to manage the affairs of England just then. The French were getting bold, now that they had almost driven the English out of France. French ships even dared to sail to the coasts of England, and French soldiers landed in the Isle of Wight and laid waste the country. All that the English could do was to make a truce with France so as to get peace for the present.

So much money had been spent on the war that the government was very poor. To get more money heavy taxes were laid upon the people; these taxes were badly managed, so that the poor had to pay more in proportion than the rich. There were other things just then which made the peasants discontented; for the landlords were trying to get the old customs obeyed which bound the peasants always to stay on the same land and work for the same master instead of moving about as they liked. A great many of the Lollards went about amongst the people preaching to them and teaching them that all men are equal, and that they need not obey the landlords. They taught many true things, but many foolish ones as well.

**The peasants rise in revolt, 1381.**—At last the peasants all over the country made up their minds to try and get the hard taxes and the old customs which they did not like done away with. Their chief leader was Wat Tyler, a Kentish man. In many parts of the country the peasants burned the houses



of the rich ; and Wat Tyler and his men marched to London, and on their way all the poor people from the villages joined them. The rich and the nobles were all frightened for their lives, and fled before the peasants. The young King, who was only sixteen, does not seem to have been frightened. He spoke to them from a boat on the river, but his ministers would not let him land to go near them.

This made the peasants very angry, they rushed on to London, and the poor Londoners threw open the gates to them and welcomed them gladly. They first went and burned the grand palace of John of Gaunt, for the poor hated him as one of the proudest and richest of the nobles. Then Tyler led the bravest peasants to the Tower. The soldiers who guarded it were so frightened that they let the peasants pluck them by the beard with jokes and laughing promises that they would treat them as their equals.

But the peasants were not content with joking ; they did fierce deeds too, for they seized the Archbishop of Canterbury and cruelly killed the poor old man ; and they killed others who they thought had helped to burden the poor with taxes. Still Richard II. was not afraid to ride out and meet them to talk over their wrongs with them. He rode boldly amongst them crying out, " I am your king and lord, good people, what will you ? " " We will that you free us for ever," shouted the peasants, " us and our lands." Then he promised them freedom and pardon for the wild deeds they had done and bade them go quietly to their homes, and the

peasants shouted for joy and prepared to do as they were bid.

But the next morning Richard again met Wat Tyler and some of his peasants. The Mayor of London, who was with Richard, grew frightened and thought that Tyler meant to stab the King. So the Mayor drew his dagger and killed Tyler. Then for a moment the King was in danger, for the crowd shouted, "Kill, kill! they have killed our captain!" But Richard rode boldly in front of them and said, "What need ye, my masters? I am your captain and your king. Follow me." The people were pleased with the courage of their King, and quite ready to believe that he would be their friend. Many did as he bade them, and went quietly to their homes. The nobles lost their fear and came together and put down the peasants who still were gathered together. After a while there was peace again. The peasants did not get all that the King had promised, but they had shown the landlords that it was not wise to treat them hardly, and by degrees they got the freedom which they wanted.

**How King Richard II. governed the land.**  
—The men who had been chosen to take care of the young King were not very wise. They taught him to be brave and do all the things that a knight should do, and they made him love comfort and luxury, but they did not teach him to govern wisely. His mother was good and wise, and kept peace between his uncles and ministers; but when she died things went badly, and all quarrelled who should have the most power.

John of Gaunt was away in Spain, and at last, when the King was twenty years old, another of his uncles, the Duke of Gloucester, pretended that the men who were about the King were traitors. He seized the chief power himself, and got the Parliament to condemn most of Richard II.'s friends to death. For a while Richard II. had to do as Gloucester bade him, but one day when he came into the council, he asked to be told how old he was; they told him he was two-and-twenty. "Then," he answered, "I am old enough to manage my own affairs. I thank you for your past services, my lords, but I need them no longer." He sent away the ministers and chose others in their place. The people were pleased with these changes, and were glad to see the King his own master.

For eight years Richard II. governed the kingdom wisely. He did the things that Parliament wanted, and tried to please his people. He loved peace, and made truces with France instead of going on with the war. His first wife, Anne of Bohemia, died, and he married Isabella, daughter of the French king, and made a truce with France for twenty-five years. But the English did not like this friendship with France, and the marriage does not seem to have done Richard any good. He grew to love French ways, and to wish that he was like the King of France and had no Parliament but could do as he liked.

Richard II. goes against Parliament, 1397.—So Richard II. began to care less for Parliament and do things that were against the laws. He

was afraid lest Gloucester and his friends should oppose him again, and besides, he wanted to punish them for the way in which they had destroyed his friends ten years before. Gloucester was killed secretly and one of his chief friends was beheaded. Then Richard began to govern without asking the advice of Parliament, and to do many things which the people did not like.

One of the greatest nobles in England was the Duke of Hereford, son of John of Gaunt and cousin of Richard. At first he and Richard were very good friends, and he helped Richard against Gloucester. But Hereford had a quarrel with another great noble, the Earl of Norfolk. They decided to settle their quarrel by fighting together, and they met for the fight in the presence of the King and many nobles at Coventry. Just as, mounted upon their horses and fully armed, they were ready to rush upon one another Richard bade them stop. He said he would not let them fight, but would punish them both for breaking the peace. So Norfolk was banished the land for his whole life, and Hereford for ten years. Perhaps Richard was glad to get rid of them both, lest they should grow too powerful.

**Henry of Lancaster wins the crown, 1399.**—A little while afterwards old John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, died, and Richard II. seized all his lands, which ought to have gone to the Duke of Hereford. Then Henry of Lancaster, as he was called now, made up his mind to come back to England and get all the discontented people to help him to get back his lands.

Richard II. was away settling some troubles in Ireland when Henry of Lancaster landed in Yorkshire. Many joined Henry as he marched through England. When Richard II. got back from Ireland he found that few were on his side against Henry. Then Henry was not content with getting back his lands. He made Richard II. say that he would give up the crown, and he put him in prison in the Tower of London.

Then Parliament met to talk over what should be done. They spoke of all the ways in which Richard II. had gone against the laws, and how he had tried to change the old English customs, and they said that he could no longer be king. Then Henry of Lancaster rose up in his place and claimed the crown, and Parliament accepted him as their king. The two Archbishops took his hands and led him to the empty throne. With a few words he thanked the Parliament and promised to govern according to the laws of the land.

Richard II. was put in prison, and not long afterwards men were told that he was dead. It was never known whether he was murdered or whether he died from illness.

**Henry IV. s difficulties.**—Henry IV. became king by the wish of Parliament and by the help of some of the greatest nobles in the land. He did not feel very safe on the throne which he had seized, and he had to be very careful in all that he did to try and please Parliament. He had many difficulties, for enemies rose up against him in England and Wales,

and they were helped by the Scots and the French. For eight years Henry IV. was kept busy by trying to bring peace into the land. All this time he kept good friends with Parliament and did the things they wanted, and at last he triumphed over all his enemies. But Parliament had grown strong in the troubled times, and when there was peace Henry IV. had still to govern by its advice.



## CHAPTER XII.

### *THE LOSS OF FRANCE.*

Henry IV. dies, 1413.—Henry IV.'s health became bad as he got old, and he grew sad and discontented. He was even jealous of his eldest son, Henry, who had shown himself both brave and wise, and had helped his father to put down his enemies, and at the end of the reign father and son were not very good friends. After a reign of fourteen years Henry IV. died, and his son became king in his stead as Henry V.

King Henry V. makes war in France.—One of the reasons why the English people had not liked Richard II. was because he wished to have peace rather than to go on with the war in France. The Black Prince's victories in France had made the English love war and glory. They were angry when they thought that after all the glory they had won they had been driven out of France. They wanted a king who would lead his soldiers into France to fight great battles. Henry IV. had been kept so busy with troubles at home that he had not been able to think of war abroad. But Henry V. was a brave and wise soldier, and he was willing and eager to please his people, now that England was quiet,

by going on with the French war. France was not at all in a state to go to war. The poor King of France, Charles VI., was mad, and could not keep the land in order. The great nobles did nothing but fight who should have the chief power, and many wicked deeds were done, so that the land suffered terribly.

It does not seem right to us that Henry V. should make war on France just because the English people wished for glory, and the French people were so miserable that it would be easy to conquer them; but in those days people thought differently about war than they do now. They wanted a king who was a brave general; they did not like a king who wished for peace. The French had always been looked upon as the enemies of the English; it seemed only right to make war on them. So we must not greatly blame Henry V. for beginning the war again; and we shall see that he fought like a true hero, and behaved so that his people and his soldiers loved and honoured him.

Henry V. wins the battle of Agincourt, 1415.—Henry V. landed his army in Normandy and spent some time in taking Harfleur. His men suffered from sickness; many died, and the rest of the army was in a rather miserable state. He determined to lead them to Calais, but on the way he heard that a great French army had been got together and lay between him and Calais, just as had happened to Edward III. when he fought at Cressy. But Henry V. was not afraid; he marched on and met the French army at Agincourt. In the French army were all the

gay French nobles with their servants, mounted on splendid horses and clothed with rich armour. The English were ragged and miserable, worn out with long marches, and many fewer in number than the French. But Henry V. rode amongst them and cheered them by bidding them remember how the English had beaten the French at Cressy and at Poitiers.

So the English, without waiting to be attacked, rushed upon the French. The ground was wet and muddy, and the French horses could not ride quickly over it. The English archers sent their deadly showers of arrows, and the French could not stand before them. It was a fierce battle, and many thousands of French knights were killed. Henry V. thanked God for this wonderful victory, and led his weary army on to Calais and then back to England. They were too worn out to do anything more just then.

**Henry V. conquers France.**—After this battle the French nobles still went on with their disputes, and the misery of France was terrible. The next year Henry V. landed with another army in Normandy, and the French were too busy quarrelling amongst themselves to stop him from taking one town after another. At last one party of the French asked Henry to make peace with them. They said that he should govern their land, and marry the daughter of their king, and be king when the poor mad Charles VI. died; but he must promise to go on fighting against their enemies, on whose side was the Dauphin, the king's eldest son. So Henry V. promised, and made peace with some of the French nobles, and

married the French king's daughter, Catherine. But the rest of the French, led by the Dauphin, grew eager to fight against him and drive him out, that they might save their country from a foreign king.

Henry V. entered Paris in triumph, but he soon had to march against the many enemies who rose against him all over France. He did not live to see peace in the land where he had brought such terrible war. He gathered his generals round his bed before he died and told them all he wished done after he was gone. He had no fear of death, for he loved God and had thought to serve Him in all that he did.

Henry VI. becomes King of England, 1422.—Henry V. only left one son, a baby nine months old, who became king as Henry VI. It was a very bad thing for England just then to have only a child as king, for a strong and wise man was needed to keep things in order both in England and in France.

In England the government was managed by the little King's uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, and other great lords. Gloucester was a clever man, with pleasant manners, which made people like him ; but he often quarrelled with the other lords, for he only thought of pleasing himself, and did not care for the good of the country.

Henry VI.'s other uncle, the Duke of Bedford, took the command in France, as his brother Henry V. had wished, for he knew him to be a brave general and a wise, good man. The poor mad French king was dead, and his son Charles was so cast down by

his troubles that he lost all courage, and instead of struggling against his enemies, tried to forget his miserable position by giving himself up to pleasure.

**Joan Darc saves the fair land of France, 1429-1431.**—The long war had brought great suffering to all the land of France. Even in the quiet country villages the peasants were often driven from their homes by the rude soldiers, and when they came back from hiding in the forests they found their houses burned and all their goods carried off. In a little town called Domremy, in Lorraine, a young peasant girl called Joan Darc grew up amongst all this trouble with a heart sad for the sufferings of her fellow-countrymen. Joan was a simple, good girl, who loved to spin by her mother's side rather than idle with the other village girls. When wounded and miserable men who had been driven from their homes passed through Domremy, Joan nursed and cared for them, and gave them her bed to sleep in. She forgot all else in her pity for the fair land of France.

After a while it seemed to Joan that she saw visions. One night she thought that the Archangel Michael stood before her in a flood of light, and bade her go and help the King of France to get back his land. Joan answered that she was only a poor maiden, and knew not how to lead soldiers. But Michael came to her again in her dreams to give her courage, and tell her that in heaven too there was pity for France. Joan felt she must go, and begged a captain in a town near by to lead her to the King. At first no one would listen to



her, but she wept and said, "I would far rather stay by my mother's side, but I must do it, for my Lord wills it." At last the captain's heart was touched, and he promised to lead her to the Court.

**Orleans is saved, 1429.**—Charles was just then at Chinon, near to Orleans, one of the noblest French cities, which was being besieged by the English. There were many French soldiers both in Orleans and with Charles, but they had grown so frightened of the English that they did not dare to fight against them. The people inside Orleans were starving, and were ready to give up their town to the English. Joan was led to Charles as he sat surrounded by his nobles and his soldiers. The peasant girl spoke to him simply and bravely. "Gentle Sire," she said, "my name is Joan the Maid; the heavenly King sends me to tell you that you shall be crowned king at Rheims, and you shall be the lieutenant of the heavenly King, who is the King of France."

Joan spoke so seriously that Charles listened to her. Clothed in shining white armour, she mounted a war-horse, holding a streaming banner in her hand. Then she rode at the head of ten thousand soldiers from Chinon to take help to Orleans, and she gave the French courage again. The soldiers followed her through the English army into Orleans; the English were too surprised to try and stop them.

So Joan's courage gave the French the courage they wanted. The rough soldiers were willing to follow her anywhere, and grew kind and gentle at her bidding.



The English soldiers were forced to go away from before Orleans, and then Joan went to the great church in Orleans and thanked God for His great mercy with such earnestness that all the people wept with her.

**Charles VII. is crowned at Rheims.**—After Orleans was saved, Joan's next task was to lead Charles to Rheims, the city where the French kings were always crowned. The French soldiers followed her gladly, and more and more flocked to join Charles' army as they marched towards Rheims. Whilst Joan gave the French courage, she so terrified the English soldiers that they dared not fight against her, for they held her for a witch.

When Charles VII. had been crowned at Rheims, Joan felt that she had done all she could, and begged to be allowed to go home again. "Would that I might go and keep sheep once more with my sisters and my brothers, they would be so glad to see me again!" she said. But Charles had found her too useful to let her go, and with a sad heart Joan was forced to stay with the army. Soon afterwards, whilst fighting to win back a town from the English, she was taken prisoner. The English carried her to Rouen. They treated her as a witch, for they said that she could only have gained such victories by wicked arts. She was tried by the French Bishop of Beauvais, and was asked question after question, to try and make her own that the voices which had bidden her do what she had done were wicked voices; but all Joan's answers showed her simple trust in God.

Joan Darc is burned, 1431.—At last, because she had put on again her soldier's dress when they bade her not, she was condemned to be burned to death as a



JOAN DARC.

witch. They made a great pile in the market-place of Rouen, and the fierce soldiers roughly dragged the girl whom they hated to her death. But when they saw her sweet patience, even they grew quiet, and one of them gave her a cross, which she clasped to her bosom. At

the last moment she cried out, "Yes, my voices were of God, they have never deceived me." Then as the flames reached her, her head sank on her bosom with one last cry of "Jesus!" "We are lost," said one of the English soldiers as he turned away; "we have burned a saint."

The English lose France, 1431-1433.—This cruel deed did not help the English. Bedford had his little nephew, Henry VI., who was then nine years old, crowned in Paris as King of France; but Bedford was wise enough to see that the French meant to have their own King Charles VII., and that it would not be possible to keep France for little Henry. Bedford hoped to keep Normandy and make peace with France. But before he could do this he died, and then everything went wrong for England, as there was no one who could take his place.

In England the great lords were divided into two parties, one of which wanted to go on with the war, and the other to make peace. At last peace was made for a time, and to make it lasting Henry VI. was married to a French lady, Margaret of Anjou. Many of the English were very discontented at this peace, and hated their French Queen Margaret. They still wanted England to gain glory and power in France. But really England needed peace very much. The country was worn out by the long expense of the war. The harvests had failed, a plague had attacked the people, and there was great suffering. The government was not strong enough to keep order, and bands of robbers

roved about the country and plundered rich and poor. Still some were so eager for war that after a while it broke out again, but things went badly for the English, who little by little lost all that they had gained in France except Calais.

So it was that the hundred years' war which Edward III. had begun so gloriously ended in shame and disgrace for the English. They lost not only all, except Calais, that Edward III. and Henry V. had won, but they lost also the rich province of Guienne, which had belonged to the kings of England ever since the marriage of Henry II. with Eleanor, Duchess of Guienne.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### *THE WARS OF THE ROSES.*

The English nobles quarrel for power.—Henry VI. was old enough to manage things for himself, but he was not fit to be king in these troubled times. Since he was a little baby he had known nothing but care and trouble. As a boy he had had to hear the business of the kingdom talked over. Instead of playing and amusing himself like other boys, he had listened to the talk of grave men, and been made to study all those things which his uncles thought would make him a wise king. He loved learning, and was very gentle and pious. He wished to govern his people well, but he was weak both in mind and body ; and though his sweetness made people love him, he could not govern well, for he could be led by any one to do as they liked. Margaret was not a good wife for him. Though she was young, she was fierce and determined. She was true to her husband, and wished to make him a strong king ; but she led him into quarrels with many of the great nobles, and by her violence helped to make one party in England more bitter than ever against another.

## THE DESCENT OF THE HOUSES OF YORK AND LANCASTER.

## EDWARD III.

Lionel, third son, Duke of Clarence.      John of Gaunt, fourth son, Duke of Lancaster.      Edmund, fifth son, Duke of York.

Philippa.

HENRY IV.

Roger Mortimer.

HENRY V.

HENRY VI.

Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March.

Anne Mortimer = Richard, Earl of Cambridge.

Richard, Duke of York.

EDWARD IV., 1461-1483.

George, Duke of Clarence, † 1477.

RICHARD III., 1483-1485.

EDWARD V., † 1483.

Richard, Duke of York.

Elizabeth = Henry VII.



As there was no strong king to keep them quiet, the English nobles went on quarrelling who should have the most power. The Duke of Gloucester died soon after the King's marriage, but this did not make things more peaceful. The Queen had her friends amongst the nobles, and against them rose up another party headed by the Duke of York.

The Duke of York was descended from one of the sons of Edward III., and many men thought that he had a better right to the throne than Henry VI., whose grandfather, Henry IV., had wrongfully taken it. He was a clever man and a good soldier, and he hoped that if he made his party strong enough he might become king when Henry VI. died. But after a while a son, Edward, was born to Henry VI., and then York saw that it would not be possible for him to become king peacefully.

In the same year that his son was born, poor Henry VI. fell ill and for a time lost his reason. So some one was needed to rule in his place, and York was strong enough to get himself chosen as Protector of the kingdom. But after a year Henry VI. got well again, and York lost his power, so that the Queen and her friends became the stronger again. Then York gathered his friends around him and determined to make war, so as to keep his power.

The Wars of the Roses begin, 1455.—For the next thirty years there was war in England, not between Englishmen and foreigners, but between Englishmen and Englishmen, and many fierce and bloody battles were fought. The people themselves

had no interest in the war ; it was only the quarrel of the nobles, and in it very many of them perished.

The King and Queen's party was called the Lancastrian, because Henry belonged to the house of Lancaster, and they took as their badge a red rose. The Duke of York's party, the Yorkists, wore a white rose ; so that the war between the two parties is always spoken of as the War of the Roses.

**Henry VI. taken prisoner, 1460.**—After several bloody battles, a battle was fought at Northampton, where the Duke of York took Henry VI. prisoner. York then went before the House of Lords in London and said that he thought the crown should be his rather than Henry VI.'s. But the Lords would not agree to take the crown away from Henry VI., and York was satisfied when they promised that he should have the crown after Henry VI.'s death.

Queen Margaret did not like this arrangement, for she wished her son Edward to be king after his father Henry. She got an army together in the north of England and marched against the Duke of York. Another battle was fought, in which York was killed, and Margaret went to London and joined King Henry again.

**Edward of March becomes king, 1461.**—But though York was dead, he had left a son, Edward, and many friends who were willing to carry on the quarrel. They soon showed that they were stronger than the Lancastrians. Edward went to London, and instead of agreeing to wait as his father had done till Henry VI.'s death, had himself crowned king at once

as Edward IV. He then got a mighty army together and marched against the Lancastrians, who were gathered in the north of England, and beat them in a terrible battle at Towton, where 40,000 men were left dead upon the field. Henry and Margaret, with their son and all their chief friends, had to flee into Scotland for safety.

### **Queen Margaret escapes to France, 1464.**

—It seemed as if Edward IV. was quite settled as King of England. But Margaret would not give up hope. Again and again she marched her friends into England, but was always driven back. Once, near the Tyne at Hexham, Margaret and her soldiers were so beaten that they had to fly and hide themselves in all directions. An old story tells us that Margaret and her son fled alone through a dark forest in the dusk of night. There they fell in with a gang of robbers, who stripped Margaret of all her jewels. But then the robbers began to quarrel together about dividing their spoil, so that they paid no heed to Margaret, and she and her son were able to escape. Tired out with walking, they tried in vain to find a way through the thick forest, when Margaret saw another robber coming towards them with his sword drawn. Margaret had a bold spirit; she drew herself up proudly like a queen and called out to the robber, "Here, my friend, save the King's son." The fierce robber was filled with respect at the name of king, and felt pity for the sad state of the Queen and her son. He knew the forest well, and led her safely through it to the sea-coast, where she found a ship in which to escape to France.

Henry VI. is taken to the Tower, 1465.—Poor Henry VI. was not so lucky. He had escaped from the battle-field, though the enemy had taken his luggage and even his hat. He hid himself in caves and woods for a year, but the Yorkists hunted for him diligently, and at last he was caught and taken to London and put in the Tower.

Then Edward IV. seemed to be safe on his throne. The people were very pleased to have him for their king. He had shown himself a very brave soldier; he was young and handsome, with very pleasant manners, and was ready to talk and joke freely with anybody. Men hoped that he was strong and wise enough to put an end to all the troubles of the past years, for every one was tired of fighting and wished to live in peace.

Edward IV. marries, 1464.—But one thing made the great nobles very angry with Edward. They found out that he had secretly married an English lady, Elizabeth Woodville. She was beautiful and charming, but the barons did not care for that. They wanted Edward to marry a foreign princess, and they grew still more angry when Edward showed great favour to all his wife's relations, and gave them lands and titles.

Edward IV. quarrels with the Earl of Warwick, 1470.—The greatest of all the barons at that time was the Earl of Warwick. He had so much power that he was called the Kingmaker, as he had done more than any one else to make Edward king. But now Edward was foolish enough to quarrel with him, and Warwick was so angry at his ingratitude that he

made friends with Queen Margaret. They got an army together in France and landed in England, where many discontented people joined them. Edward IV. had to fly before them, and thought it wisest to leave the country. Then they took Henry VI. out of prison and made him king again.

**The battle of Barnet, 1471.**—But in six months Edward landed in England. He marched to London, where the citizens, who had always been fond of him, welcomed him gladly. There he found Henry VI., and the poor old King was again made prisoner. Then Edward IV. marched out of London and met Warwick on Easter morning on Barnet Heath. Warwick had the bigger army, but Edward attacked him boldly before it was quite light. There was a thick mist that morning, and neither army could clearly see the other; they fought wildly in desperate confusion. Warwick himself was killed and seven thousand of his followers. Edward rode gladly back to London in the afternoon, where the merry peals of the bells and the joyful shouts of the people celebrated his victory.

**The battle of Tewkesbury, 1471.**—The same day Queen Margaret had landed in England with another army. She heard with sorrow of the battle of Barnet, but still she marched on to meet Edward IV. Another terrible battle was fought at Tewkesbury, and once more Edward IV. drove his enemies from the field, and killed them by hundreds as they tried to escape. The young Edward, Margaret's son, was slain, and after the battle Queen



Margaret herself was taken prisoner. After that Edward IV. was quite safe on his throne. All his chief enemies had been killed without mercy in these battles, and to make himself quite safe he had the unhappy Henry VI. secretly killed in prison.

**How Edward IV. ruled the land.**—Edward seemed to be an easy-going man who wished to lead a gay and splendid life, but in his heart he cared for power more than anything else. He wanted to rule the land himself, and did not wish to be troubled by Parliament. He had seized the lands of all those nobles who had fallen in battle against him, saying that they were traitors, and so their lands must come to the Crown. In this way he was rich enough at first to do without asking money from Parliament. He soon spent all his money, for he was extravagant and loved splendour, and to get more money he forced the rich merchants and nobles to give him presents, which he called benevolences. He was cruel and unforgiving, and if any one offended him he found a way of punishing him, so that men were afraid not to do his will. He thought his brother the Duke of Clarence was plotting against him, and he had him brought to trial and condemned to death. After this Clarence was secretly killed in the Tower ; no one knew how he died, but men said at the time that he was drowned in a butt of Malmsey wine.

**Edward IV. dies, 1483.**—Edward IV. himself died five years afterwards ; he had ruined his health by his gay life, and it is said that his last years were made bitter by remorse for Clarence's death.



**Printing is brought into England, 1476.**—There is one thing for which we may be grateful to Edward IV. He was a kind friend to William Caxton, a man who did much for the cause of learning in England. Up till this time all books had to be written by hand or printed from wooden blocks, and this made them so dear that very few could afford to buy them. So people in general read very little, if they learned to read at all. But some clever men at Maintz, in Germany, invented a way of printing books by making separate letters of metal and putting them together, and they printed their first book, a Bible, in 1455. After this the knowledge of printing spread from one town to another, and in Flanders the Englishman William Caxton learned the precious art. He brought a printing press to England, and began to print and sell books at a shop in Westminster. He worked very busily, and printed the works of Chaucer and other English poets, and all such books as men were most likely to want. He even found time to translate books himself, for he had a real love for knowledge, and wished to help others by making books cheap and plentiful. Edward IV. and his family all befriended Caxton, and one of the Queen's brothers, the Earl of Rivers, even translated a book which was printed at his press.

**Richard, Duke of Gloucester, seizes the crown, 1483.**—Edward IV.'s eldest son was only twelve years old when his father died. He became king as Edward V. He was too young to rule, and his mother's relations, who had care of him at first, hoped to

have things their own way. But Edward IV. had left a brother, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, who was a very clever man. Richard wanted to get power for himself, and did not care how he got it. He got the young King under his care, and managed to have himself named Protector, which means that he was to rule till the King was old enough to rule himself. Then he set to work to get rid of those men who he was afraid might oppose his plans. He came into Council one day with a stern and angry face and said that Hastings, one of the chief nobles, was conspiring against his life. At that moment a band of armed men entered the room, and turning to Hastings, Richard cried out, "I will not dine till they have brought me your head." Hastings was hurried out and beheaded without a trial. After this charges were brought against the Queen's relations and other nobles, and many were beheaded.

Richard so frightened the young King's mother that he managed to make her give over to his care the King's little brother, the Duke of York. The two young Princes were lodged together in the Tower, which in those days served both for the abode of kings and prisoners.

Richard next pretended that Edward IV. and his queen had not been rightly married, and that in consequence Edward V. was not the rightful king. Some of the lords who favoured his cause came to him and asked that he himself would take the crown. Richard pretended at first to be unwilling, and then to give way. He was soon after crowned in London with much pomp as Richard III.

**How Richard III. ruled in England.**—Now that Richard was king he seemed to wish to rule well, so that men might forget the unjust way in which he had seized the crown. He rewarded all those who had helped him by giving them land, and riches, and titles. He went a progress through England, showing himself to the people, who, on the whole, received him gladly. Still there were many who were discontented, and they made a plot to drive Richard from the throne. But Richard was on the watch for them, and he seized and beheaded the chief people who had plotted against him.

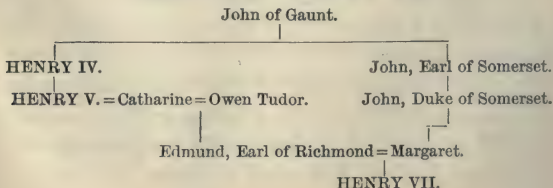
**The two little Princes are murdered, 1483.**—Just about the time of this plot it began to be whispered about that the two little Princes had disappeared in the Tower. No one has ever known certainly from that day to this how or when they died. But the story that was believed at the time, and seems the most likely, is that Richard III. ordered the governor of the Tower to have them killed. When the governor refused to obey, Richard III. had him sent away on some excuse for one night and had another man, Sir Walter Tyrrel, put in his stead, who was willing to obey the King's cruel orders. Two of Tyrrel's servants were told to kill the Princes. They found them sleeping peacefully in one another's arms, and smothered them with their pillows.

The belief that Richard III. had thus cruelly caused these innocent children to be killed, and all the other cruel things that he had done, made every one hate and fear him. Richard III. tried to please the people by

showing them that he wished to govern according to the laws of the land. Parliament met and settled many things for the good of the people, all of which Richard III. seemed to encourage. But all the while men were plotting to drive him from the throne and get a new king to reign over them.

Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, becomes king, 1485.—In Edward IV.'s reign all the chief members of the house of Lancaster had been killed, so that it seemed as if the house of York was quite sure of the throne. But one man had escaped from the power of the Yorkists who was ready still to fight for the house of Lancaster. This was Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond. He was not sprung from any of the kings of the house of Lancaster, but his mother was great-granddaughter of John of Gaunt, Earl of Lancaster, Edward III.'s son. The friends of the house of Lancaster now agreed with those who had become disgusted with the cruelties of Richard III. that they would place Henry Tudor on the throne, and that he should marry Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV., so as to bring together the Yorkists and Lancastrians.

#### DESCENT OF HENRY VII.



**The battle of Bosworth, 1485.**—Henry Tudor landed in Wales, for his father had been a Welshman, and he hoped to find friends among the Welsh. Richard III. marched against him, and the two armies met at Bosworth in Leicestershire. There on the field of battle some of those who till now had seemed to be Richard III.'s friends went over with their soldiers to the enemy. Richard III. saw that there was no hope for him; full of rage and despair, he dashed into the thickest of the battle. He fought like a madman, and flung down the standard of the Lancastrians. He tried to get at Henry Tudor, but fell covered with wounds. They found the crown that he had worn hanging on a hawthorn-bush, and crowned Henry with it there on the battle-field.

**The state of things in England.**—Now let us notice how the state of things in England had changed in the last years.

1. The English kings had lost all the lands they had held in France, and after this they never tried again to win them back. So they had more time and thought to give to their own affairs at home

2. A very great number of the English barons had been killed in the Wars of the Roses. The King need no longer be afraid of the power of the barons, so that he was able to do more as he liked. Parliament by itself, without the help of the barons, was not yet strong enough to resist him.

3. The invention of printing made books cheap and plentiful. All over Europe men began to study and

to think more. They found again many of the great books written by the Greeks and Romans, and studied them, and learned much from them. Men grew wiser, and began to think more for themselves. As they thought more, they soon saw many things which they would like to make better. You will see how they began to wish to make changes in their religion, so that what is called the Reformation came about in Europe.

4. The discovery of America by Columbus in 1492 led many Englishmen to sail on voyages of discovery to new lands. The riches of America were brought home to England by traders. Englishmen settled in the new lands which they had found, and planted colonies, as these settlements were called. The English sailors showed themselves to be more skilful and bold than the sailors of any other land, so that England became, what she still is, "The Mistress of the Seas."



DESCENT OF THE TUDOR KINGS.

HENRY VII. = Elizabeth of York.  
1485-1509.

Arthur.

Margaret = James IV.  
of Scotland.

James V. of Scotland.

Mary, Queen of Scots = Earl of Darnley.

JAMES I., 1603-1625.

HENRY VIII. = Ann Boleyn = Jane Seymour. Mary.  
1509-1547.

MARY,  
1553-1558.

ELIZABETH,  
1558-1603.

EDWARD VI.,  
1547-1553.

Frances  
Brandon.

Jane Grey,  
† 1554.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### *THE TUDOR MONARCHY.*

**Henry VII.'s enemies.**—Henry VII. had promised before he became king to marry the Lady Elizabeth of York, and he kept his promise; but at first he did not show her any honour, because he did not wish to seem to hold power through his wife. Many men in England still cared much for the house of York, so they were angry that Elizabeth was not better treated; and they made many plots against Henry VII. Once they got hold of a boy called Lambert Simnel, the son of a joiner in Oxford, and said he was the Earl of Warwick, son of Edward IV.'s brother the Earl of Clarence. Warwick was really a prisoner in the Tower, but many people believed in Simnel, and came together to fight for him. Henry VII. defeated them and took Simnel prisoner, but he forgave him and made him a scullion in his kitchen.

After this Henry VII. saw that it would be wiser to show more honour to his wife, and he had her solemnly crowned. He also set to work to make laws to keep down the power of those nobles who were left, so that they might not be able to trouble him any more.



HENRY VIII.

How Henry VII. ruled the land.—Henry VII. wished to be a strong king, to keep the land quiet, and make every one keep the laws. To be strong he felt that he must have plenty of money, and he was very clever in finding out ways to get money from the people. He got as much money as he could from Parliament, which decided what taxes the people were to pay. Then, like Edward IV., he forced rich men to give him presents of money, which were called benevolences. His minister, Archbishop Morton, used to send for merchants who he thought were rich and ask for money. If they lived very grandly, he told them that it was easy to see from their way of living that they could help the King; if they lived simply, he told them that it was clear they must be saving money so fast that they could very well spare the King some. This way of catching men, however they behaved, was called Morton's fork.

Henry VII. used to get money too by fining men who broke the laws. He was strict with every one, even with the great lords. The nobles used to keep in their pay a great many men whom they called their retainers, and who wore special dresses or liveries to show to what lord they belonged. These retainers were armed, and were ready to fight for their lord whenever he wished; so that the nobles, by getting their retainers together, could raise men to fight for them in their quarrels. This was what Henry VII. wished to prevent, and he made a particular court of law where his chief ministers sat together to judge the nobles

who broke the laws and kept large numbers of retainers. The room in which the judges sat had a ceiling ornamented with stars, so the court was called "the Court of the Star Chamber."

**Henry VII. fines the Earl of Oxford.**—There is a story told which shows how strict Henry was in making the nobles keep the laws. He went once to visit the Earl of Oxford, who received him in his castle with great splendour. When the King went away, the Earl's retainers were drawn up in their liveries in two long rows for the King to pass through. "My lord," exclaimed Henry, "I have heard much of your hospitality, but it is greater even than I had heard; these are surely all your household servants." But when the Earl told him that they were his retainers who had come to see the King, Henry said, "My lord, I thank you for my good cheer, but I may not endure to have my laws broken in my sight; my attorney must speak with you." The Earl had to pay a fine of more than £10,000 for this offence.

**Perkin Warbeck, 1492-1499.**—But though Henry VII. took so much care to keep the kingdom quiet, he was disturbed by another plot. A young man called Perkin (Peterkin, or little Peter) Warbeck pretended that he was Richard of York, the second son of Edward IV., whom men believed to have been murdered in the Tower with his brother Edward V. Many people both in England and abroad believed or pretended to believe in Perkin Warbeck. Henry VII.'s enemies were glad to help Perkin, and the Scottish king, James IV.,

even gave him a noble lady in marriage. For five years the land was kept unquiet by plots in favour of Perkin Warbeck. At last he tried to lead an army into England, but his soldiers fled away before Henry VII.'s army, and Perkin himself was taken prisoner. He was taken to London and made to confess before the people who he really was, and then he was shut up in the Tower. There he made another plot among the prisoners, and when it was found out he was put to death.

At last Henry VII. grew so strong that men felt it was useless to make plots against him any more, and for the last ten years of his life he lived in peace.

**Henry VII. makes friends with foreign kings.**—Henry VII. wished not only for peace at home, he wished for peace abroad as well. He did not care for war, and he tried to live on friendly terms with foreign kings. He arranged marriages between his own family and the families of other kings. He gave his daughter Margaret in marriage to James IV. of Scotland. Since the time of Edward I. the English and Scots had been foes, but this marriage was meant to bring them together again; and it led in time to a King of Scotland becoming King of England as well.

Henry VII. made friends too with Ferdinand, King of Spain, and married his eldest son Arthur to Katharine, Ferdinand's daughter. Soon after Arthur died, and as Henry VII. did not wish to send Katharine back again, it was agreed that she should be married to his second son, Henry. The Pope's leave had to be asked for this, as the Church does not allow a man to marry



his brother's widow. In this case the Pope was willing, and when Henry became king he married Katharine, and you will see that this marriage led to a great deal of trouble.

**John Cabot sails to Newfoundland, 1497.**  
—In Henry VII.'s reign we hear for the first time of ships sailing from England to America. The first man who sailed across the Atlantic from England was John Cabot, a Venetian who had settled at Bristol. Cabot had come to believe, as Columbus had, that there must be land on the other side of the great ocean that seemed to stretch away boundlessly to the west. When he heard of Columbus' discoveries he became still more eager to go himself, and four years and a half after Columbus had first landed in America Cabot and his sons sailed out from Bristol in two stout ships on a voyage of discovery. They went more to the north than Columbus had done, and instead of finding lands rich with splendid fruits, and mines of gold and silver, they landed on the bleak coast of North America, and found an island which they called Newfoundland, a name which it bears to this day.

When Cabot got back to England he was received with great rejoicings. The English, we are told, ran after him like mad people. The King rewarded him with money, and promised him help for other voyages. Soon after this John Cabot died, and his son Sebastian Cabot made several other voyages of discovery, though Henry VII. soon grew tired of helping him, and did not treat him very generously.

**Henry VII. dies, 1509.**—Every year Henry VII. grew to care more and more about money. He had two judges, Empson and Dudley, who were terribly harsh in their ways of raising money, so that the people murmured greatly. Henry VII. died after he had been king twenty-four years. He had been a very useful king, for he had brought peace again into the land after it had been so terribly troubled by the Wars of the Roses ; but he was not loved, for he had been harsh and greedy after money, and men did not mourn for him when he died.

**Henry VIII. becomes king, 1509.**—After Henry VII.'s death his son became king as Henry VIII. He was only eighteen years old, tall, strong, and handsome, with fair hair and a ruddy face. He was skilful in all bodily exercises ; he could play on musical instruments, make verses, and was a true friend of learning. His manners were kindly and pleasant to all ; he loved feasting and merry-making, and men hoped that under him the land would be peaceful and happy, for they were weary of the stern rule of Henry VII. From the first, too, Henry VIII. seemed to wish to show that he hated the evil-doings of his father, for he caused Empson and Dudley to be tried for their misdeeds and beheaded. This made the people like him all the more, and Henry VIII. wanted all men to think well of him and be fond of him. In after years, when he did things which people did not like, he always tried to throw the blame on his ministers.

**Henry VIII. makes war, 1513.**—Henry VIII.

wanted to be a great man not only in England, but in Europe too, and to show that he was a good soldier. At that time the kings of France and Spain were enemies, and each was anxious to have Henry VIII. as their friend. At first Henry VIII. made war on France. He went to war more as though it were an amusement than as a serious business. He led an army to invade France, and wasted the money which his father had so carefully got together upon idle show which did no good.

**The battle of Flodden, 1513.**—Whilst Henry was away, the Scots, who had always been friendly to France, crossed the border to make war on the English. Fortunately Henry VIII. had left a clever general in England, the Earl of Surrey. He led an army against the Scottish army, which was led by the King of Scotland himself, James IV. They met on the field of Flodden, in Northumberland, at the foot of the Cheviots. It was a fierce battle, and for some time it seemed doubtful which side would win; but at last James IV. himself was killed and many of the Scottish nobles, and there was great joy in England at Surrey's victory. James IV.'s son, who became king after him, was only a child, and the Scots were so busy with their own affairs that they did not trouble the English for some time.

Soon after the battle of Flodden, Henry VIII. made peace with the King of France and came back to England.

**Wolsey grows in favour with the King.**—Henry VIII. wished to order everything in England as

he pleased, but he was too fond of amusement to take much trouble about business matters himself. He soon found a man whom he could trust to do all the business of the State for him, and who was ready and able to spare him the trouble which he hated. This man was Thomas Wolsey, who had been one of Henry VII.'s chaplains. He was only the son of a merchant of Ipswich, but he was so energetic and so wise that he came to be by far the greatest man in England, next to the King. Henry VIII. grew fond of Wolsey, because they cared about the same things, and because Wolsey was so truly devoted to him that he was ready to do anything for him. When Henry saw how useful Wolsey could be to him, he gave him one great office after another. First he made him Archbishop of York, and then he made him Chancellor, which was the chief office in the State. The Pope made Wolsey a Cardinal, which is the highest dignity in the Church except Pope, and then he made him *Papal legate* in England, which means that he had the same power over the Church in England as the Pope himself would have had if he had been there.

From all his offices Wolsey gained very great riches; and he used to get large presents of money from the kings of France and Spain besides, each of whom wished to have him for a friend, so that he might win over his master to be a friend to them. He spent his money freely, and lived with great grandeur. All the nobles did him honour. He built himself splendid houses, two of which, Hampton Court and York House, since

called Whitehall, afterwards became royal palaces. He was fond of learned men and gathered them around him, and he did much for the cause of learning. He founded a school at Ipswich, and began to build a great college at Oxford, which is now called Christ Church, and is the largest and richest of all the colleges.

But though Wolsey lived in great splendour he did not lead an easy life. No man in all England worked harder or did his work better than the splendid Cardinal. Henry VIII. was not an easy master to serve. When he made up his mind to anything it had to be done, however difficult it was. Wolsey loved his royal master with great devotion, and did all he could to serve him. He wanted to get on himself, too, and seems to have hoped that he might some day become Pope, but in this he was disappointed.

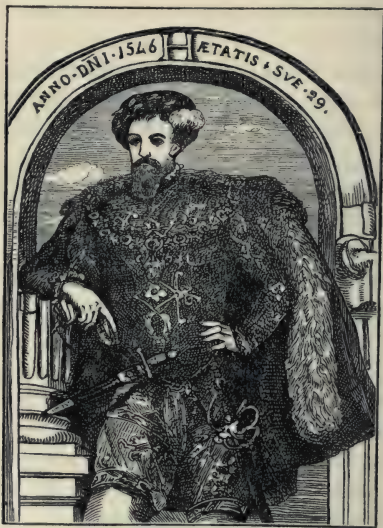
**How Wolsey dealt with foreign kings.**—Wolsey was very clever in his dealings with foreign kings. During the troubles of the Wars of the Roses the other kings in Europe had not thought much of England, but now Wolsey made them feel that England was a great nation, and that it would be well for them to have the King of England for their friend.

Wolsey at first seemed inclined to be most friendly with Charles the King of Spain, who was nephew of Katharine, Henry VIII.'s queen. Charles became the chief man in Europe, for he ruled over Germany as well as Spain and the Netherlands. But Wolsey wished Francis I. of France still to think that Henry VIII.



would be friends with him, and it was arranged that the two kings should have a meeting together.

**The Field of the Cloth of Gold, 1520.**—The place where Henry VIII. met Francis I. was near



A NOBLEMAN IN THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII.

Guisnes. There splendid wooden palaces had been built, with the walls and ceilings hung with silk and gold. Each king had all his chief nobles with him, and every one had tried to come with as magnificent a train as possible. Many had sold their lands



to get money to spend on their dress. Splendid jewels and fine clothes were to be seen on all sides, and the days were spent in jollity, feasting, and tournaments or mimic battles, in which the nobles and even the kings showed their skill. So great was the magnificence displayed that the place of meeting was called the Field of the Cloth of Gold. But though Henry VIII. behaved in a very friendly way to Francis I., he had really made up his mind to give his friendship to Charles V. Wolsey hoped that Charles V. would help him some day to become Pope. So after the meeting at the Field of the Cloth of Gold Henry VIII. went to meet Charles V. in a much quieter way and made a treaty with him.

Soon after Charles V. made war on Francis I. and Henry VIII. sent troops to help him. But though Francis was completely beaten and even taken prisoner by Charles V., the English got no good from the war. Neither did Charles V. keep his promises to Wolsey, for when the old Pope died he did not get Wolsey chosen Pope. So both Henry VIII. and Wolsey grew tired of being friendly with Charles V. and began again to make friends with Francis I.

**The English hate Cardinal Wolsey.**—Henry needed a great deal of money for his wars and for his magnificent Court. It was Wolsey's business to get the money which his master needed. They both wished to do without Parliament as much as possible, for Henry VIII. wished to rule by himself. So Parliament met very seldom, and Wolsey got much of the money

he wanted by ways which were against the laws of the land. For he made men lend or give the King money whether they wished or no, and he raised taxes without the consent of Parliament. People had to pay a great deal of money, and they were afraid to refuse. They thought it was all Wolsey's doing, and hated him for his strict rule. They did not understand that it was Henry VIII.'s extravagance that made it needful for Wolsey to get so much money. Henry VIII. was always very clever in making it seem as if it was his ministers and not he who did the things the people did not like.

Whilst the people hated Wolsey for his taxation, the nobles hated him because he had all the power in his hands, and because the King did nothing without him, and he had many enemies who were eager to harm him if they could.

Henry VIII. wishes to put away his wife. —After Henry VIII. had been married about eighteen years to Queen Katharine he began to grow tired of her. They had several children, but only one, the Lady Mary, lived to grow up, and Henry VIII. much wished for a son who might be king after him. Queen Katharine was good and loving and accomplished, but she was older than Henry VIII., who was still as fond of pleasure as he had been when he was quite a young man. He thought that in everything he must follow his own wishes, and he had fallen in love with a young lady of the Court, Anne Boleyn, and wished to have her for his wife. So he began to find out all sorts of

reasons why he ought to put away Katharine. He said that it was wrong of him ever to have married his brother's wife, and that though the last Pope had allowed it, that did not make it right. So what Henry wanted was that the Pope should now say that it was wrong that he had married his brother's wife, and then he would put away Katharine and marry Anne Boleyn.

When Henry VIII. told Wolsey what he wanted, Wolsey found that it was no good trying to change the King's mind. When Henry once wished for anything nothing could ever make him give it up. Wolsey himself said of him, that rather than give up his will he would risk the loss of half his kingdom. "I have often kneeled before him in his Privy Chamber," said Wolsey, "the space of an hour or two to persuade him from his will and appetite, but I could never dissuade him." So in this matter of his marriage Wolsey felt that he must try and get it settled as the King wanted.

**Wolsey goes to Paris, 1527.**—It was not at all an easy matter, and all Wolsey's cleverness in managing people, and writing letters to foreign princes and their ministers, failed. Charles V., of course, was against it, as Katharine was his aunt, so Wolsey tried to get Francis I., King of France, to help him. For this purpose Wolsey went to Paris himself. He was followed by a splendid train of lords and gentlemen, 900 in number. He travelled in great state, riding upon a mule covered with crimson velvet. Before him were borne two crosses and two pillars of silver, the great seal of

England, and his cardinal's hat. Everywhere as he journeyed through France he was received with the greatest honour. Francis I. himself, with his mother and sister, who had with her more than a hundred ladies mounted on white palfreys, came to meet him, and embraced him most heartily.

But though Wolsey did all he could, things did not get on. How hard Wolsey toiled we can learn from one of his servants, who tells us that one day in France Wolsey sat from four in the morning till four in the afternoon writing letters without having time to taste food or even to take his nightcap off his head.

Wolsey loses his favour with the King, 1529.—Henry VIII. grew very impatient; he spent his days hunting and amusing himself with Anne Boleyn, but he could not be content till he had made her his queen. He thought Wolsey was not doing all he could to help him, and Anne Boleyn and her friends, who did not like Wolsey because he was so rich and powerful, did all they could to make the King angry with him. At the same time the English people were angry with Wolsey, because they thought that it was he who made the King wish to put away the good Queen Katharine, whom they loved. Wolsey got the Pope to send a man called Campeggio to England to talk about the divorce, and he hoped that he would help him to get the Pope to do as Henry VIII. wanted. But Campeggio went away without settling anything. Then Henry was very disappointed, and blamed Wolsey for having sent for Campeggio, and he grew so angry with him

that he found an excuse for taking away his great offices from him and making him give over to him all his goods.

Henry VIII. was delighted to get the splendid houses of the cardinal, and all his beautiful plate, and jewels, and gold, and embroidered hangings. He seized every thing so greedily that for a while Wolsey was left without linen or plate to eat from, or even money to pay the wages of his servants.

Then Henry VIII. bade Wolsey go to York and do his work as archbishop. So Wolsey journeyed to the north, and there he showed such care for his people that they soon grew to love him. When his enemies in London heard this they were afraid lest he should gain power again. They pretended to have found out some wrong things that he had done, and Henry VIII. sent to fetch him to London.

**Wolsey dies, 1530.**—Wolsey's heart sank within him at the news. He loved the King so dearly that the loss of his favour had been a bitter grief to him; now he saw that his enemies meant to bring him to utter ruin. He was ill and worn out with hard work and grief, and journeyed slowly towards London.

When he stopped to rest all night at Leicester he said to the abbot who received him, "Father Abbot, I am come hither to leave my bones among you." Then he went to his bed and never rose again. He said as he lay dying, "If I had served God as diligently as I have served the King, He would not have given me over in my grey hairs!" So Wolsey died, his enemies were

satisfied, and the King lost the faithful servant who had worked so hard for him.

**Henry VIII. marries Anne Boleyn, 1533.—**After Wolsey's death Henry VIII. tried in many ways to persuade or frighten the Pope to let him put away Katharine and marry Anne Boleyn. But the Pope would not, so at last Henry VIII. made up his mind to quarrel with the Pope and do as he liked. He made a man called Thomas Cranmer, who had written in favour of the divorce, Archbishop of Canterbury. Cranmer called Queen Katharine before his court, and when she would not come, he decided that she should be put away and that the King might marry some one else. Henry VIII. married Anne Boleyn secretly, but afterwards had her crowned with great pomp. Poor Queen Katharine had all this time borne with patience the neglect with which Henry VIII. had treated her, but she always said that she was his lawful wife. She lived quietly in England till her death, about three years afterwards.



## CHAPTER XV.

### *THE REFORMATION.*

What came of Henry VIII.'s quarrel with the Pope.—After Henry VIII. had married Anne Boleyn against the Pope's will it was impossible that the two should be friends. So Henry got the Parliament to say that henceforth the Pope should have no power in England, and that he himself would be supreme head of the Church. For some time all over Europe, but chiefly in Germany, people had been saying that the Church had got into such a bad state that it needed many changes. The clergy and the monks had grown rich and lazy, and only cared for their own enjoyment. The Pope interfered in all sorts of things with which he had nothing to do, and besides there were many who thought that the Church taught things which were not true, and that the belief of the Church should be simple, and men should be allowed to study the Bible for themselves, and the clergy should be allowed to marry. This discontent with the Church led to what is called the *Reformation*, for men wished to *reform*, or make better, the Church.

The man who did most in Germany to bring about

the Reformation was Martin Luther, who had been a monk himself. He translated the Bible into German for the people, and many followed him and broke with the Roman Church altogether, and were called Lutherans or *Protestants*, because they *protested* against Rome.

At first Henry VIII. had been very much against the Reformation, and he had even written a book against Luther ; but now his own wishes led him to break with the Pope, and this led to other changes afterwards.

Most people in England were not sorry to quarrel with the Pope, because the English had never liked the interference of the Pope in their land. People wished, too, very much to see the clergy and the monasteries reformed. Since printing had been invented men learned and studied more. At Oxford there were wise scholars who had learned Greek and read the New Testament in the language in which it was written. These men wished others to be able to study too, and so they wanted the riches of the Church to be spent in teaching men and helping men to grow wiser, and not only to be used by the monks and clergy for their own pleasure. Wolsey had wished to help the cause of learning, and when he founded his great college at Oxford, the King allowed him to take the riches of some of the small monasteries to build his college.

Now when the King had quarrelled with the Pope, Parliament went on to make some changes in the government of the Church. They said that the Pope was to have nothing to say to the Church in England, and that the Church was to pay him no money.



HENRY VIII. GIVES THE BIBLE TO ARCHBISHOP CRANMER AND LORD CROMWELL.  
—From *Cranmer's Bible* in the British Museum.

Thomas Cromwell becomes the King's chief adviser.—The man who helped Henry VIII. most after Wolsey's death was Thomas Cromwell. He had been engaged in business, and had made money and got into Parliament. Wolsey noticed him as a man who might be useful, and took him into his service. After Wolsey's death Cromwell managed to make himself useful to Henry VIII., and in time became as powerful as Wolsey had been. Cromwell was a very hard man; he set himself to serve the King, and made it his object to make Henry VIII. all-powerful in England. Henry and Cromwell were both very harsh in the way they treated those who would not do as they wanted. Many people did not like all the changes they made in the Church, but Henry VIII. was determined that every one should say that they agreed to them, and those who would not were terribly punished.

Thomas More is executed, 1534.—After Wolsey's fall Sir Thomas More had been made Chancellor. He was a very wise man, and was famous all over Europe for his learning. He was a sweet and gentle man, always gay and kindly, whom every one loved, and all that we hear about him makes us love him too. More wished the evils in the Church to be done away with, but he wished the Pope still to be head of the Church. When he would not say that the King had done right in putting away Katharine he was put in prison. At first even Cromwell was afraid to kill so great a man. Cranmer tried to persuade him to swear that he would look upon the

King as the head of the Church, but More would not give way. He was kept in prison for some time and then brought out to be tried and condemned to death. As he turned to leave the court his son threw himself on his knees to ask his blessing, and on his way back to the Tower his best-loved daughter twice broke through the crowd and threw herself into his arms, weeping too bitterly to speak. More himself stayed quite calm, and only bade his daughter pray God for his soul. He was cheerful even to the moment of his death. As he climbed the ladder which led up to the scaffold it tottered. "See me safe up," he said; "in my coming down I can shift for myself." When he laid his head on the block he moved aside his beard, which he had allowed to grow in prison, muttering, "Pity that should be cut; that has not committed treason."

**Terror reigns in England.**—Others died for the same cause as More. Even Bishop Fisher, an old man of eighty, famous for his learning and piety, was beheaded. Men saw that there was no mercy for those who did not obey the King's will.

Cromwell went on making more changes in the Church. First of all he did away with all the smaller monasteries, and seized all their lands and moneys for the King. After a while he put down all the greater monasteries too, and the King took their lands and sold or gave them to his favourites amongst the nobles and spent their money on his pleasures.

The monks had grown lazy, and many of them lived ill lives, and they did not do much for the people, so



that the people were on the whole glad to see them put down. But when their lands went to new masters, the people found that they were harder than the monks had been. So they grew very discontented with these changes and harsh doings ; but when they tried to rise against the King and Cromwell, they were soon put down and their leaders were put to death.

**Anne Boleyn put to death, 1536.**—After a time the King grew tired of Anne Boleyn. She only had a daughter, Elizabeth, and he wished very much for a son. He said that Anne had done wicked things, and she was tried and condemned to death. We do not know whether Anne had really done these wicked things, or whether Henry VIII. only said so as an excuse for getting rid of her. But the day after she was beheaded he married a young lady of the Court, Jane Seymour, whom he loved as fondly as he had once loved Anne. Queen Jane did not live long, but died after the birth of her son Edward.

**Cromwell loses the King's favour, 1540.**—Henry VIII. had done away with the Pope's power in England, and had made some changes too in the church services, and the teaching of the Church, but he did not wish to make so many changes as the Protestants in Germany had done. There were some Protestants in England, and they were treated as hardly as those who clung to the old Church. The King wished every one to think just as he did. Many Protestants were put to death, till all men grew afraid of saying or doing anything contrary to the King's will.



Cromwell wished to make Henry go further in his changes, and make friends with the Protestant princes in Germany. So he proposed that Henry should marry Anne of Cleves, the daughter of one of these princes. Anne was a fat, stupid woman, and Cromwell knew that the King would not marry her if he knew what she was like. So he had a portrait painted of her, in which she was made very pretty, and showed it to the King, who agreed to marry her. When Anne of Cleves came to England, and Henry saw her, he was disgusted with her. He soon found an excuse for putting her away, and was very angry with Cromwell for having deceived him. Cromwell had many enemies, who said all they could against him to the King. All sorts of charges were brought against him, and Henry VIII. had him beheaded, though he had served him so faithfully. No one could be safe from Henry VIII.; he knew that he and Cromwell together had done many things which the people did not like, and he wished it to seem as if it was all Cromwell's fault. Cromwell had been so harsh and cruel that none was sorry for him; but we must not forget that it was he who did away with the Pope's power in England, and made the Church the people's Church.

**The last years of Henry VIII.**—After Cromwell's death there were still many struggles about religion in England. Sometimes Henry VIII. favoured one party and sometimes the other. After he put away Anne of Cleves he married an Englishwoman, Catherine Howard, but she was found to have been a

bad woman before her marriage, and was put to death. Two years afterwards the King married Katharine Parr. She seems to have been a wise woman, and knew how to manage him, and she lived with him till he died.

As Henry VIII. grew older he grew enormously stout. He could not move from room to room without the help of machinery, and at last it became very difficult for him even to sign his name. His temper grew very bad, and he did many cruel and unjust things at the end of his reign. At last he died, after reigning thirty-five years. Few wept for his death, for though his people had loved him much at first, his harshness had driven away their love. He was a cruel man, who put his own will and his own pleasure before everything else, but still he was a king who did much for England. For the things that he wanted to do were often the things which his people wanted too, and he made England a great country, so that the other princes in Europe respected her and sought her friendship.

Edward VI. becomes king, 1547.—Though Henry VIII. had been married six times he only left three children—Mary, daughter of Katharine of Aragon; Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn; and Edward, son of Jane Seymour, who became king at his father's death, when he was only nine years old.

Henry VIII. had made a will saying that the land was to be ruled by a council of sixteen men till his son came of age. At the head of this council was put the Earl of Hertford, brother to Jane Seymour and uncle to the little King Edward VI.

The country was so used now to being ruled by one man, that Hertford found it easy to get all the power into his hands. He had himself made Protector of the realm and Duke of Somerset.

**The cause of the Protestants triumphs.—**Somerset was in favour of the Protestants, and he and Archbishop Cranmer set to work to make many more changes in the religion of the land. They made the Prayer-Book such as we have it now, and bade the clergy use it. The images in the churches were taken down, the pictures on the wall were covered with whitewash. Archbishop Cranmer himself ate meat in Lent, which the Catholics thought very wrong. These changes were so sudden that they shocked people, as most of the English did not wish for so many changes as these, and they began to grow discontented with Somerset.

It was very difficult to govern England wisely at that time. Men were divided into many parties, and there was a great deal of suffering and discontent amongst the poor. It had needed the strong hand of Henry VIII. to keep the country quiet. Somerset made the troubles worse by showing himself so much the friend of the Protestant party that other men grew angry with him. He was weak, too, and unwise in the way in which he tried to put a stop to the disturbances in the country, and he offended men by his grandeur. He built a great palace in London, which is still called Somerset House, and he even pulled down churches, so that he might have room to make it very large.

**Somerset loses his power, 1549.—**Little by

little Somerset lost most of his friends, and he had to give up his office as Protector. After this the chief power in the land went to the Earl of Warwick, who made himself Duke of Northumberland. He was a selfish man, and cared only to get on himself. People soon came to dislike him, and Somerset began to get friends round him again. Then Northumberland grew afraid. He said that Somerset meant to kill him, and Somerset was tried and condemned to death. The common people grieved much for him, for he had tried to befriend them in their poverty against the hard treatment of the rich and the nobles. He died very calmly and nobly, and the people crowded round the scaffold to dip their handkerchiefs in his blood.

Northumberland settles the succession.—After that Northumberland had everything his own way. He, too, was in favour of the Protestants, and he and Cranmer went on with the work of making the land Protestant. But though the services of the old Church were put a stop to, and men were made to worship as Northumberland wanted, he did not put those to death who differed from him in religion, but was content with milder punishments.

Edward VI. was a weakly boy, and it was clear that he could not live long. This made Northumberland afraid of what would happen after his death, for in Henry VIII.'s reign it had been settled that if Edward VI. died without children his elder sister Mary was to be queen. Mary was a strict Roman Catholic, and clung to the old Church. Northumber-

land felt that if she became queen things would go badly with him. Edward VI., though only sixteen, had very strong opinions, and was an earnest Protestant. So Northumberland was able to persuade him to make a will, in which he put aside his sisters and named a new successor. The successor he chose was Lady Jane Grey, his cousin, the granddaughter of Henry VIII.'s sister Mary. Northumberland married Lady Jane to his son, and if she became queen he hoped still to keep all the power. Lady Jane was a good and gentle girl, who had been carefully brought up, and was fond of study. She liked a quiet life, and had no wish to be queen. It was Northumberland who made this plan for his own sake.

**Edward VI. dies, 1553.**—Edward VI. grew weaker and weaker. He was taken to Greenwich for change of air, and seemed to grow better for a while. But he soon grew worse again, and died before he was sixteen. He was a pious and industrious boy, but he seems to have been self-willed like his father.

After Edward VI.'s death Northumberland at once had Lady Jane proclaimed queen. But the English had no wish to see the rightful successor to the throne shut out in this way. The chief nobles gathered round Mary. When Northumberland saw that he could not make Lady Jane queen he proclaimed Mary himself.

**The Lady Mary becomes Queen.**—Lady Jane, after being queen for nine days, left the Tower when she heard that Mary was proclaimed queen.



Elizabeth, Mary's sister, at the head of 150 horse rode out to meet the Queen as she drew near to London. Side by side the two sisters rode through the streets of the city, which were lined with joyous crowds to see them pass. Of the two Elizabeth was the more pleasing to look at. Mary was small, with a careworn face and dark piercing eyes, which filled those on whom she looked with respect and even fear. When Mary rode into the Tower, she found kneeling on the green some bishops and nobles who had been imprisoned in her brother's reign for their religion. She burst into tears when she saw them, and raising them, kissed them and gave them their liberty. One of these prisoners, Bishop Gardiner, she made her Chancellor and adviser in all things.

Northumberland and some of his friends were soon brought to trial. Northumberland tried to save himself by pretending that he had always been a Catholic in his heart; but it was no use, and he was beheaded. Lady Jane and her husband were kept in prison.

**Mary brings back the old religion.**— Mary had been brought up a Catholic, she loved the old religion, and wished to bring it back into England. Many of the people, too, liked the old religion; they did not wish the Pope to have any power in England, but they liked the old services, and did not care for all the changes which had been made under Edward VI. So when Parliament met it was willing to undo the changes which had been made. Archbishop Cranmer and the Protestant bishops were sent to prison, and



Catholics were put in their place. As Mary's mother had been a Spaniard, Mary was inclined to turn for help and friendship to Spain. She asked the advice of the Emperor Charles V. in all her difficulties, and she wished to marry Charles V.'s son Philip.

**Sir Thomas Wyatt rebels against the Queen, 1554.**—The English did not like the thought of this marriage, for they hated foreigners. So those who were against the marriage joined with some of the Protestants and made a plot to turn out Mary and set up Elizabeth as queen. The leader in this plot was Sir Thomas Wyatt. He got together a great many men and marched towards London, where Mary was. But Mary was very brave. She stayed in St. James' Palace, though her ministers on their knees begged her to seek safety in the Tower. Every one else was terrified; her women shrieked and hid themselves, but Mary trusted that the Londoners would be true to her. Wyatt found the gates of London closed upon him; his followers fell away, and he was taken prisoner, and soon after beheaded.

**How Mary punished her enemies.**—After Wyatt's plot was put down, Mary determined to make herself safe by punishing all those who had taken part in it. She even consented to order the death of Lady Jane Grey and her husband. Lady Jane was only a girl of seventeen, and innocent of all evil. Mary sent word that she might see her husband for a moment to bid him farewell; but Lady Jane refused, saying that in a few hours they would meet in heaven. From the

window of her cell she saw her husband led out to be beheaded, and saw his bleeding corpse brought back. Then she went out to die quietly and cheerfully. On the scaffold she spoke a few simple words, saying that her trust was in the blood of Christ. Then she repeated a psalm. They gave her a kerchief, which she tied round her eyes. Then feeling for the block, she said, "What shall I do, where is it?" They guided her to it, she laid her head upon it, and said, "Lord, into Thy hands I commend my spirit." With one stroke her head was severed from her body.

More than fifty people were beheaded for having taken part in Wyatt's rebellion. Even Elizabeth was taken prisoner and sent to the Tower. For some time it was thought that she too would be beheaded, but Mary and her advisers did not dare to go so far. After a while she was set free again, but she was always watched; and after this she was careful to live quietly and take no part in what went on, so as not to fall into danger.

Mary now felt safe, and able to do as she liked. Philip of Spain came to England, and they were married, to Mary's great joy, for she loved him fondly. The Pope was again made head of the Church, and the old religion was brought back.

**How men suffered for their religion.**—But Mary was not content with the triumph of the old religion. She wished to destroy the Protestants. The leading Protestants were brought to trial before the Bishops, and if they would not change their religion

they were condemned to be burned to death. This seems both cruel and wicked to us, but Mary did it because she believed it to be right. In those days men thought that if others would not think as they did about religion it was their duty to punish them. When the Protestants were the stronger they persecuted the Catholics, and when the Catholics were the stronger they persecuted the Protestants. Though Mary ordered such cruel things to be done, she was not cruel herself. She seems to have been kind to those with whom she had to do, to have visited the poor and done many charitable deeds.

The Protestants were not afraid to meet death boldly. They died cheerfully, telling to the last how they trusted in God, and rejoicing in being called upon to suffer for Him. The most famous of those who perished were the Bishops Latimer and Ridley and Archbishop Cranmer. They were burned at Oxford. Latimer and Ridley, both famous for their learning and piety, were burned together. "Play the man, Master Ridley," said Latimer, as the fire was being lighted. "We shall this day light such a candle in England as by the grace of God shall never be put out." Archbishop Cranmer had done more than any one else to change the Church in England, but he had not the courage of many far humbler Protestants. To save his life he was willing for a time to change his opinions, and he wrote saying that what he had taught before was untrue. But he was condemned to be burned all the same, and then he grew ashamed of what he had done.

Before he was burned in Oxford he told the people that he firmly believed in Protestantism, and when he was at the stake he held his right hand to be burned first in the fire, since it had offended by writing what his heart did not believe.

It was Mary herself who was most eager to persecute the Protestants. When her ministers grew tired of the cruel work she urged them to go on, for she believed that it was her duty not to stop till she had rooted out what she thought to be wrong. But the persecution did not change men's opinions as she hoped it would. It made Protestantism stronger rather than weaker; for even those Englishmen who did not agree with the Protestants did not think it right that men should be burned for their opinions. When men saw that the Protestants were willing to be burned rather than change they began to think more of them. But as the Protestants were not destroyed by her persecutions, Mary thought it must be because she had not persecuted them enough, and she ordered more and more of them to be burned, so that the people grew to hate her and called her Bloody Mary.

**The English lose Calais, 1558.**—Soon other troubles came upon the land which made men hate Mary's rule more and more. Her husband, Philip II., had become King of Spain and ruler of the Netherlands, because his father, Charles V., had given up his crown, and gone to end his days in a monastery. Philip II. made war on France, and the English were persuaded to join him. The English got nothing by this war, but

the French managed to seize Calais, which was very



QUEEN ELIZABETH.

carelessly guarded, and so the English lost the last of all the places they held in France. The English felt



this as a great disgrace, and Mary was bitterly grieved. She said on her deathbed that if her breast were opened after death, "Calais" would be found graven on her heart.

**Mary dies, 1558.**—The war brought another grief to Mary, for the Pope took the side of France, and after all she had done for Catholicism she found herself the enemy of the Pope. She had many troubles. She had no child, and her husband, Philip II., treated her coldly and was seldom with her. Her health was bad, her people did not love her, she saw that England was poor and troubled, and felt that people were longing for her to die that her sister Elizabeth might become queen, and then all she had tried to do for Catholicism would be undone. Worn out with sorrow, Mary died after being queen only for five years.

**Elizabeth becomes queen, 1558.**—England was in a very miserable state when Mary died; men looked hopefully for Elizabeth to set things right, and put an end to the troubles of the last two reigns. During Mary's reign Elizabeth had lived quietly, and men did not know much of her opinions. She had obeyed Mary and gone to the Catholic services, but as she was Anne Boleyn's daughter, the Protestants hoped that in her heart she loved the new religion.

Elizabeth was twenty-five years old when she became queen. She was tall and well made, with bright blue eyes and reddish hair. She had delicate white hands, of which she was very proud, and she would play with her rings so that her courtiers might admire her hands. Eliza-



beth had studied a great deal, for it was the fashion in those days for ladies of high birth to study. Both Mary and Lady Jane Grey had been learned. Elizabeth knew Greek and Latin, and could speak Italian and French easily. She was a clever musician, a bold rider, and a graceful dancer. She was very fond of grandeur, and her Court was always magnificent. Her dresses and jewels were splendid. It is said that when she died she left between two and three thousand dresses in her wardrobe. She was proud and haughty in her manner, but she could be gentle and loving if she chose. From her courtiers she expected nothing but admiration, their words of praise could not be too warm to please her. But Elizabeth did not care only for pleasure and admiration. She loved her people, and knew how to work hard for their good. She was wise in business matters, and she was very clever in choosing for her ministers men who could serve her and their country well. She wanted to get peace abroad for England, and peace at home from religious quarrels. We shall see how she succeeded in doing this.

**Elizabeth changes the religion of the land.**  
—Elizabeth's chief adviser was William Cecil, Lord Burleigh. He had already helped her with his advice before she became queen. She made him one of her chief ministers, and he served her faithfully till his death. At first Elizabeth had to behave very carefully, for the country was still at war with France, and she was afraid of doing anything to make herself enemies. She at once said that all those who were in prison for their

religion were to be let out ; but for a while she went to the Catholic services, as they had been set up by Mary. When peace was made with France she felt herself more free, but she did not make changes very suddenly. There were many things about the Catholic religion which Elizabeth did not like, and she did not want the Pope to have any power in England ; but she did not wish to make all the changes that the Protestants wanted. So it came about that the Church of England, as we have it now, was set up. Some men thought it was much too like the Roman Church, and others thought that it was not like enough ; but on the whole, men grew to love it by degrees. The land was threatened with many dangers from without, and this made Englishmen who loved their country feel that they must keep together and gather round their queen. They were true to Elizabeth, for they felt that her cause was the cause of their country, and that she would work with them to make their country great and strong.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### *THE STRUGGLES WITH SPAIN.*

The dangers which threatened England from without.—Elizabeth could not hope to be friends either with France or with Spain. Philip II., who wished to keep his power over England, had asked her to marry him ; but Elizabeth had refused, for if she had married Philip II., the country would have had to stay Catholic and obey the Pope. Philip II. was a violent Catholic who thought that all Protestants ought to be burned. He was not likely to be pleased with the changes which Elizabeth made in England

In France Elizabeth had a very dangerous enemy. Mary, the young and beautiful Queen of Scotland, had been married as a child to Francis, the heir of the French throne. Mary was granddaughter of Margaret, Henry VIII.'s sister, who had married James IV. of Scotland. Many people thought that Mary ought to be Queen of England instead of Elizabeth, because they said that the marriage of Anne Boleyn and Henry VIII. had not been lawful. When Mary became Queen of Scotland she began to call herself Queen of England too. Elizabeth was afraid lest the French

should make war to set Mary, Queen of Scots, upon the English throne. Scotland was governed whilst Mary was in France by her mother, Mary of Guise, who was a Frenchwoman. It was very dangerous for England that Scotland and France should be such close friends, for at any time the French could land an army in Scotland, and easily march into England.

In most countries in Europe at this time there were a great many Protestants; but as a rule it was the people who were Protestants, while their rulers remained true to the Catholic Church. Burleigh wished Elizabeth to make herself the head of all the Protestants in Europe, and save them from the persecution of their rulers. Elizabeth did not exactly do this, but she stirred up the Protestants in the Netherlands to make war on Philip II., and the Protestants in France, who were called Huguenots, to make war on their king, and she helped them with money. In this way France and Spain were kept busy with troubles at home and could not harm England.

**The Protestants triumph in Scotland.**—In Scotland, too, there were a great many Protestants. Their chief preacher was John Knox, who knew how to speak words which went to the hearts of men. Mary of Guise tried to put down the Protestants, but they were too strong for her. She got French soldiers to help her, and this made the Scots angry. Those among the Scots who hated the French joined with the Protestants to drive out Mary of Guise and her French soldiers, and they sent some of the nobles to Elizabeth

to ask her to help them. Elizabeth agreed, and for a time there was fighting in Scotland; but Mary of Guise died, and then peace was made at Edinburgh. It was settled that the French soldiers were to leave the land, that Mary, Queen of Scots, should no longer call herself Queen of England, and that whilst Mary was in France Scotland should be ruled by a council formed of a number of nobles. Things were now settled in Scotland just as the Protestants wished. Many more changes in religion were made in Scotland than had been made in England, and to this day, though both Scotland and England are Protestant countries, there is a good deal of difference in the way in which their services in church are carried on.

Mary, Queen of Scots, goes to Scotland, 1561.—Mary, Queen of Scots, would not agree to the Peace of Edinburgh; she still hoped that some day she might become Queen of England. Soon after the peace, Mary's husband, the King of France, died, and Mary, who was only eighteen years old, was left a widow. Then she had to go to Scotland to rule over her people. She was very sorry to leave France and its gay Court, where she had been ever since she was a little child. As the ship which bore her sailed away, she looked sadly at the coast of France fast fading from her sight, and stretching out her arms she said, "Farewell, beloved France, farewell; never shall I see thee more!" The Scots greeted her joyfully; they were glad to see their young and beautiful queen come to live among them. Mary was a Catholic,

but she meant to try and live at peace with her Protestant subjects. She took her half-brother, the Earl of Murray, for her chief adviser, and for a time it seemed as if all might go well.

Elizabeth did not feel at all friendly to Mary, Queen of Scots. She was always afraid lest the Catholic



MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS.

party in England should try to put Mary on the English throne. The two queens used to write very loving letters, but in their hearts they hated one another.

Mary, Queen of Scots, quarrels with her nobles, 1565.—A few years after Mary came back to Scotland she married her cousin, Henry Stuart, Lord



Darnley. . He became a Catholic after his marriage, and some of the other nobles became Catholic too. Mary began to hope that with the help of the Pope and the King of Spain she might make Scotland Catholic again. She quarrelled with her half-brother the Earl of Murray, and he and his friends had to flee into England. Mary might have been able to have things her own way now if her husband had helped her, but instead of that he quarrelled with her. Darnley was a weak and foolish man, who only wanted to get power for himself. He thought the Queen cared too much for an Italian secretary of hers, David Rizzio, and he made a plot to get rid of him, and persuaded some of the nobles to help him. One night when the Queen was sitting at supper with Rizzio and some others in her room at Holyrood Palace, Darnley came in and began to speak pleasantly to her. A moment afterwards one of his friends, Lord Ruthven, came in followed by some others. "It would please your Majesty," said Lord Ruthven, "to let yonder man Davie come forth of your presence, for he hath been overlong there." Rizzio in terror tried to hide himself behind the Queen, and caught hold of her dress. Mary would gladly have saved him, but Darnley tore off his hands and held her, whilst the others dragged Rizzio to the door and stabbed him there, and then threw his body down the stairs. Darnley would not let the murderers be punished, and at first it seemed as if now he and his friends would be able to make Mary do as they liked.

**Darnley is killed, 1566.**—But Mary was too clever for them. At first she pretended to forgive Darnley, and she made friends again with Murray, who came back to Court. Two months after Rizzio's murder Mary had a son, James, and there was great rejoicing at his birth, and men hoped that now all would go well. But Mary had not forgiven Darnley; they did not live happily together. One of the Scottish nobles, the Earl of Bothwell, made a plan to kill Darnley, marry the Queen, and make himself the greatest man in Scotland. Darnley, who was ill, was living in a different house from the Queen. One evening, whilst Mary was dancing at a ball in Holyrood Palace, the house in which Darnley lay was blown up by gunpowder, and he was killed.

**Mary marries Bothwell, 1567.**—Every one believed that Bothwell had done this, but he was too powerful to be punished. Three months afterwards, when Mary was on her way to see her son, Bothwell, with a troop of soldiers, met her and carried her off to one of his castles, where he married her. By marrying the murderer of her husband Mary lost everybody's respect. Her people were horrified, and it was said that she had helped to plot Darnley's murder. The nobles were afraid lest Bothwell should get too powerful, and every one turned against him and the Queen. Bothwell was not strong enough to fight against the nobles; he fled away from Scotland, and Mary was taken as a prisoner to Edinburgh. The people received her with scorn and horror, and waved banners before her

on which there were pictures of Darnley's murder. The nobles made her give up her crown. Her infant son was made king, and Murray was called upon to rule the kingdom till the King was of age.

**Mary flies to England, 1568.**—Mary was sent as a prisoner to Lochleven Castle. After a while she managed to escape, and her friends in Scotland gathered an army round her; but Murray destroyed their army, and Mary fled from the battlefield into England. She would rather trust to the English queen than to the Scottish nobles. She sent to Elizabeth to ask her to help her, and to let her go through England to France. Elizabeth was very much puzzled what to do. She did not want Mary to go to France, for she was afraid that if she got there the Catholics might try to make her Queen of England as well as of Scotland. She felt that it would be setting a bad example to rebels if she were to send her back to her enemies in Scotland. At first she hoped that she might make peace between Murray and Mary, but she found that was impossible. She refused to see Mary herself, and at last Mary, who had fled to England for safety, found that she was treated as a prisoner, and that her only hope of escape would be to get the Catholics in England to help her.

**The Catholics plot against Elizabeth.**—The fight between the Catholics and Protestants was going on more bitterly than ever in Europe. The kings of France and Spain were trying, by all the cruel and harsh ways they could think of, to destroy the Protes-

tants. Elizabeth did not want to risk going to war to help the Protestants in other lands, but she sent them money and encouraged them secretly. Many Protestants fled from France and the Netherlands to England, and were kindly welcomed. They settled in England, in London and Norwich, and other parts of the eastern counties. They were very useful to England, for they were industrious and clever men, and taught the English many new trades.

Whilst Elizabeth was secretly helping the Protestants abroad, Philip II. did all he could to help the Catholics in England to plot against her. Philip II. was the most powerful ruler in Europe, and he was England's bitter enemy. This made those of the English who wished their land to be free and strong stand by Elizabeth, and be ready to do anything for her. When they spoke of her they used words of love and admiration which seem to us so exaggerated as to be quite foolish. But their love for Elizabeth was part of their love for their country, and they were ready to face any danger for her sake.

The English knew that Philip II. wished to destroy the greatness of England, and this made them hate the Spaniards as their worst enemies. The discovery of America had made men love adventures on the sea. The rich lands of South America belonged to Spain, and from them Philip II. got the money which made him strong. But the English seamen did not see why all the riches of America should go to Spain. They fitted out ships and sailed from the English ports to

try and capture the great Spanish ships laden with gold and silver and precious spices on their way home from America. They brought back great prizes to England, and did much harm to Spain. Elizabeth pretended to be angry, for she was supposed to be at peace with Philip II., but she did not mind taking some of the spoil herself. The English sailors did not only plunder, but they tried also to discover new lands; and some began to think of settling in these lands across the sea, and making colonies as the Spaniards had done.

**Drake sails round the world, 1577-1581.**  
—The boldest of all the English seamen was Francis Drake. He made many voyages, attacked the Spanish ships, even landed in the Spanish towns in South America, and brought home rich plunder. Philip II. sent letters to Elizabeth complaining of the things Drake did, but she did not stop him. At last Drake did what no one else had done before; in a little ship called the *Pelican* he sailed round Cape Horn into the Pacific, which the Spaniards looked upon as belonging to them. He plundered Spanish ships and Spanish towns, and then sailed on right round the world. He got back to England after three years, when all men thought him dead, and brought with him the richest plunder that any one had yet brought home. Great were the rejoicings in England. Elizabeth herself went to visit him on his ship, where he gave her a splendid feast; and she took for herself much of the spoil he had brought home, and wore some of the precious stones in her crown.



### Sir Walter Raleigh founds the first colony.

—The man who first tried to found a colony in America was Sir Walter Raleigh, one of the gentlemen at Elizabeth's Court. He was a very clever man, and a great favourite with Elizabeth. This first colony was called Virginia, after the virgin Queen Elizabeth. It was in North America, and was a very fertile country, but it did not succeed just at first. Raleigh brought home from there two things which made a great difference to men. One was the potato, which had not been known in Europe before, and which he taught men to grow on his lands in Ireland. The other was tobacco; people were frightened at first when they saw men smoking, they thought they were on fire, but the habit soon spread.

Catholic plots trouble England. — The English seamen troubled Philip II. very much, and made him all the more willing to help the Catholics in England. Many plots were made against Elizabeth. Mary, Queen of Scots, had had so many troubles that men had grown sorry for her, and had quite forgotten her faults. Many thought of her as a beautiful and unhappy woman who was kept in prison by a cruel enemy. They made plots to set her free, and make her queen instead of Elizabeth. Mary herself was always plotting, writing letters to gain men over to help her, and winning over many by her clever words. The plots were always found out in time, for Elizabeth had clever ministers who managed to hear what was going on. Still no one felt safe as long as Mary was alive.



Mary, Queen of Scots, is put to death, 1587.—At last, after Mary had been nineteen years in prison, some Catholics made a plot to kill Elizabeth, and Mary knew of the plot and consented to it. But it was found out, and those who had made it were punished. Then Elizabeth's ministers persuaded her to have Mary tried for her share in the plot. Mary was tried and found guilty, and condemned to death. At first Elizabeth would not consent to let her be beheaded, but her ministers at last persuaded her to sign the order. The Earl of Shrewsbury was sent to Fotheringay Castle, where Mary was imprisoned, to tell her she must die the next morning. Mary received the news bravely, saying that the day which she had long wished for had come at last. She spent her last night in writing letters and in prayer. The next morning she dressed herself gorgeously, she bade farewell to her weeping servants, and gave them her blessing. It was only after much begging that she was allowed to take two of her maids and four of her men on to the scaffold with her. To the last she was quiet and full of courage, praying aloud in Latin and French till she laid her head upon the block. All who saw her die were filled with pity and admiration at her noble bearing, but most men were glad at Mary's death. It saved them from plots and troubles at home. Englishmen might have been willing to help Mary against Elizabeth, but not many even of the English Catholics would be willing to help Philip of Spain against Elizabeth.

Elizabeth was very angry when she heard of Mary's death. She pretended that her ministers had ordered it against her will, and tried to throw the blame on them. It was a cruel deed, and it would have been better if Elizabeth had never allowed Mary to stay in the land. When she saw how dangerous it was to have Mary in England, it was already too late to let her go, and at last it was needful for the safety of England that Mary should die.

The Spanish Armada is sent against England, 1588.—Philip II. had long been planning an attack upon England. He was more eager for it now than ever, for as Mary was dead, if he could destroy Elizabeth he might keep England for himself. To the world he said that he was going to punish Elizabeth for Mary's death. When he was getting his fleet ready to come to England, Drake set sail to do what he called "singeing the Spanish king's beard." With twenty-five small ships he went to Cadiz, the chief port of Spain, and burned forty or fifty ships and a great store of provision that had been got together for the expedition to England. Philip II. with much anger had to put off his expedition for a while, but at last the fleet was ready to be sent against England. It was called "the most fortunate and invincible Armada," and was made up of 132 ships, so huge and with so many soldiers on board that it seemed as if it would be useless for the English to fight against them.

At first Elizabeth would not believe in the danger, but when she found that it was impossible to make

peace with Philip II. she got ready to fight against him. The English, both Protestants and Catholics, were ready to fight for their Queen, for they loved their country and did not want it to be conquered by the Spaniards. The Queen's fleet was very small, but many gentlemen fitted up ships at their own expense. Drake and all the other brave seamen were there ready to fight under the admiral, Lord Charles Howard, against the hated Spaniards.

But when the English had done all they could, their fleet was so much weaker than the Armada that it would have seemed madness to try and attack it. Howard let the Armada sail up the Channel, and he followed them, meaning to attack them whenever he saw a chance. Men crowded on the coasts of France and the Netherlands to see this wonderful Armada with its huge ships pass. The English ships were so small and light that Howard could not see how he was to do any harm to the Spanish ships. But a clever plan was thought of. Six old ships were filled with tar and other things which burn easily, and were then set on fire and sent amongst the Spanish ships. A wind sprang up which took them right into the middle of the Armada. The Spanish sailors were terrified, and in trying to escape their ships got into great confusion. Some were burned and some captured, but most fled away northward, driven by the wind. The English ships followed them, and there was a great deal of fighting. The English ships were small and light, and could move about much quicker than the

Spanish ships, and darted amongst them, doing them great harm. But the wind helped the English more than anything else, for it drove the Spanish ships helplessly before it. The English fleet followed after them till all their powder and shot and provisions were spent. Then they turned back and met with a terrible gale which scattered them for a while, but they got safely into harbour. The same gale did much more harm to the Spaniards in the northern seas ; some were driven on to the coast of Norway, some wrecked on the coast of Scotland. The few who escaped sailed right round Scotland, and so back to Spain. Only fifty-three ships out of the 132 which had sailed out came back again.

So England escaped this great danger ; and the loss that Philip II. suffered by the ruin of his Armada was so great that he was never able to try to invade England again. The English seamen grew bolder than ever in their attacks on Spanish ships and Spanish lands, and England grew rich with their spoil.

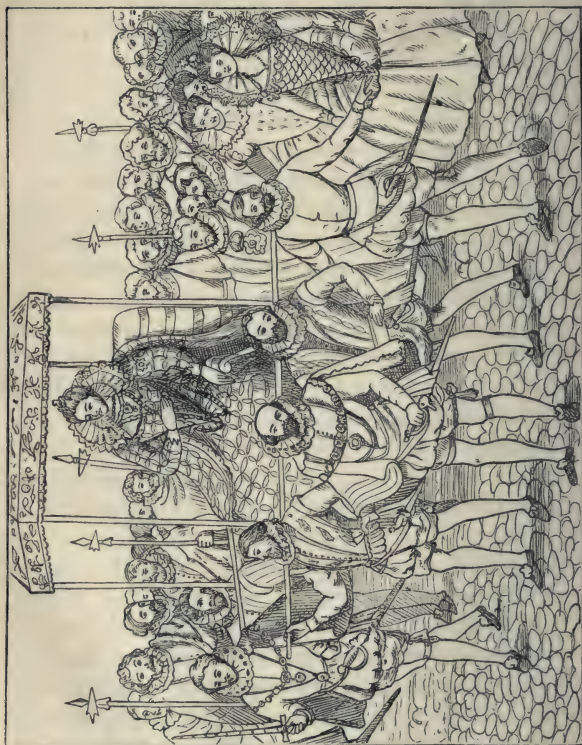
**How Elizabeth favoured the Earl of Leicester.**—Elizabeth's own gladness at the defeat of the Armada was spoiled by the death shortly afterwards of the man whom she most loved, Robert, Earl of Leicester. He was one of the nobles at her Court, a gay and handsome man, whom she loved so much that she would have married him, but she was afraid lest such a marriage should raise up enemies against her. When she first became queen men were eager that she should marry, for they wished her to have a child who might reign after her. Many foreign princes and English

nobles were proposed to her as husbands. She would let them hope for some time, and seldom refused decidedly, but she ended by marrying no one. There were so many dangers round her already that she was afraid to make new ones by marrying ; for if she chose a husband to please some people, she was sure to offend others, while so long as each hoped that she might marry him, he was careful not to offend her. The only man she seems ever to have wished to marry was Leicester, and as he was neither wise nor good, it was well for England that she did not marry him. But she always kept him near her and treated him with much favour ; and his death was a great sorrow to her. Other men took his place afterwards, and there was always a great deal of quarrelling amongst her courtiers who should get most of her favour. Elizabeth expected her courtiers to care for no woman but herself. She was furious when any of them married ; she liked them to say flattering words to her and praise her beauty, even when she was a wrinkled old woman with black teeth.

England prospers under Elizabeth.—Elizabeth's Court was very gay ; she liked fine clothes and splendid feasts. She would ride through London to show herself to the people, surrounded by troops of her ladies and gentlemen in their finest clothes, or she would sail down the Thames in a gay barge, followed by a long train of other boats. She was fond, also, of travelling about the country and visiting her nobles in their castles. Then the nobles would try who could



entertain her with most magnificence, and who could invent the most wonderful amusements for her.



ROYAL PROCESSION OF QUEEN ELIZABETH AND HER COURTIERS.

But though Elizabeth liked splendour, she did not waste money. She was so careful of money that she



has often been called stingy. But she knew that her country was poor when she became queen, and she felt that she must do all she could to save money and make her people rich again. So she was careful not to go to war, and so too she was willing enough to take some of the spoil which the English seamen got from the Spaniards. She succeeded in making the country rich and happy. She was careful not to tax the people heavily, and she did all she could to help on commerce, so that in her days English traders were very busy. Much cloth was made in England which was carried to other lands to be sold. As men grew richer they learned to live more comfortably, and as the land grew peaceable they no longer needed to live in castles for defence against their foes, but began to dwell in houses such as we have at present. Good houses were built and lovely gardens laid out, and people began to think a great deal of the comfort of their homes. The people, like their Queen, were fond of amusement, and the land might well be called Merry England in those days.

One of the chief amusements was the theatre, and the greatest poet that England has ever had, William Shakspeare, acted in the plays which he wrote himself. Besides Shakspeare there were many other great playwrights, such as Marlowe and Ben Jonson. More great poets and writers lived in England then than at any other time. It was the fashion to write poetry, and most of the gentlemen at Elizabeth's Court made verses. The noblest gentleman among her courtiers, Sir Philip Sidney, was also one of the greatest poets.



ANCIENT WOODEN HOUSES IN LONDON, IN ONE OF WHICH  
SIR R. WHITTINGTON IS SUPPOSED TO HAVE LIVED.

Sidney was famous all over Europe for his talents ; he was a brave soldier, a wise statesman, a learned scholar, besides being a model of true courtesy. His mind was pure and noble, and all loved and honoured him. Sidney died young, when he was in battle in the Netherlands, where Elizabeth had sent Leicester with some soldiers to help the Protestants. His last deed shows what a true Christian he was. As he was being carried away wounded from the battle-field, parched with thirst, he called for some drink, which was brought him. Just as he put the bottle to his mouth he saw a poor wounded soldier, who was being carried by, look with terrible longing at the drink. Sidney took the bottle from his lips untouched, and handing it to the soldier said, "Thy need is greater than mine."

Another great poet of those days was Edmund Spenser, who wrote a long poem called "The Fairy Queen," full of the adventures of knights and ladies, in which he sang in allegory the struggles of the Protestants against the Catholics, and the devotion of the English to their Queen.

All these great poets, as well as all the brave deeds that were done by Englishmen in those days, make us look back to the reign of Elizabeth as one of the most famous times in the history of our country ; and though Elizabeth had many faults, she was a good queen for England in those days of danger. She loved her country, and she knew how to make wise and brave men ready to do all they could to serve her and England.

Elizabeth favours the Earl of Essex.—After Leicester's death Elizabeth grew very fond of the handsome Earl of Essex, a brave young nobleman. He was thirty years younger than she was, but she expected him to love her as fondly as she loved him. Burleigh and the other wise ministers wanted the country to have peace after all its troubles. But Essex, who was young and loved adventure, wished for war, and as he could often persuade the Queen to do what he liked, he was allowed to make several expeditions against Spain. Philip II. was not able to make war openly on Elizabeth, but he hoped to trouble her very much by helping the Irish to rebel. The Irish had never liked being ruled by the English, and now they were more discontented than ever, for they were all Catholics. One of their nobles, the Earl of Tyrone, got a great many men to join him in rebelling against the English, and Philip II. and the Pope helped him. But Philip II. died, and Tyrone had to struggle on alone.

As Essex was very troublesome in England, Elizabeth's ministers determined to send him to Ireland to fight against Tyrone. Essex did not want to go; he wanted to stay at home, and thought he could have everything his own way. He was so self-willed that he often had quarrels with Elizabeth, who expected obedience from every one. Once when she refused to think as he did at a meeting of her council, he was so rude as to turn his back upon her. Elizabeth in a rage gave him a box on the ear. Then Essex

laid his hand upon his sword, and said passionately that he would not have borne such an insult from Henry VIII. himself. After this he stayed away from Court for some time ; but the quarrel was made up, and it was settled that he should go to Ireland. It was thought that he would do great things there. But men were disappointed ; he fought no battle, and made peace with Tyrone, against Elizabeth's orders.

**Essex is beheaded, 1601.**—Essex thought that the Queen loved him so much that she would forgive him anything. He left Ireland and travelled quickly to London. As soon as he got there, he hurried into the Queen's presence, though he was covered with dust and dirt from his long journey. Overjoyed at seeing her favourite so unexpectedly, Elizabeth at first greeted him very kindly ; but when she had time to think, she forgot her love for him in her anger at the way in which he had neglected his duty. He was kept as a prisoner in his own house, and all his offices were taken from him. When Essex saw that there was no hope of getting the Queen's favour again, he made up his mind to try and take her by force, and then when he had her in his own power, make her do as he liked. He got all his friends around him, and marched with them into the city. He hoped that the Londoners, who had always liked him, would rise and help him to seize the Queen ; but the people looked on in surprise, and no one was willing to help him.

After this Essex was tried and condemned to death for treason. Elizabeth felt that she could not save him, much though she still loved him. Others had been

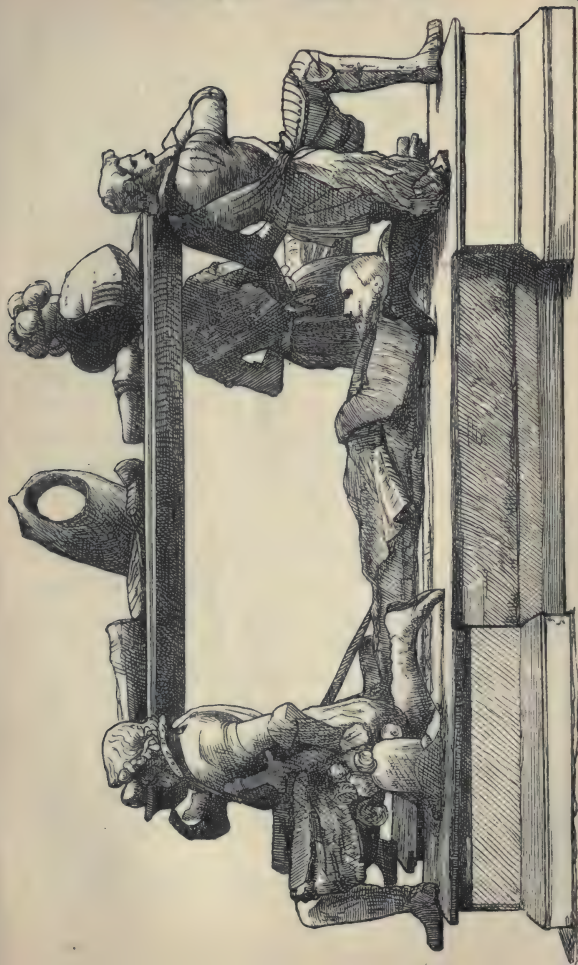


punished for lesser crimes, and in justice Essex must be punished too. It is said that he had a ring which she had given him, bidding him send it to her when he was in trouble and she would help him. This ring he now tried to send to the Queen, but it fell into the hands of the wife of one of his enemies, and she kept it instead of sending it to Elizabeth. Sometime after Essex's death she confessed this to the Queen, begging her to forgive her, but Elizabeth answered, "God may forgive you, but I never can."

**Elizabeth dies, 1603.**—Elizabeth was very sad after Essex's death. She had grown old. Burleigh and many of her other trusted advisers had died, and she felt herself left alone in the world. Day by day she grew more melancholy, and at last she would hardly touch food. So the great Queen died at the age of seventy, after reigning for forty-six years.

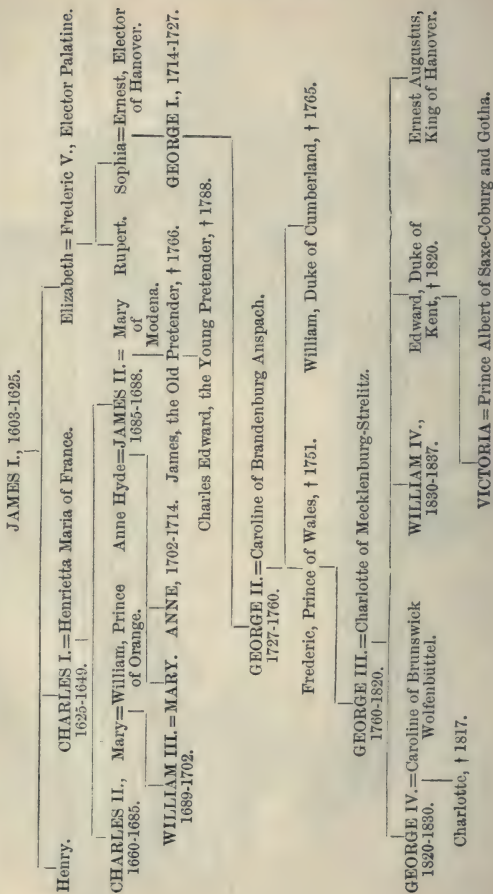
**James VI. of Scotland becomes King of England, 1603.**—Elizabeth never liked to say who should reign after her, and when she was dying, and men asked her to name her successor, she would not answer. But though she would not let the matter be spoken of, other people's thoughts were full of it. Her nearest relation was James VI. of Scotland, the son of Mary, Queen of Scots, and great-grandson of Henry VIII.'s sister Margaret. Many of the chief men in England had written to him to tell him that they hoped he would be king after Elizabeth. Robert Cecil, Burleigh's son, who had become Elizabeth's chief adviser after his father's death, had promised James to





TOMB OF SIR FRANCIS DE VERE IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

## THE STUART KINGS AND THE DESCENT OF THE HOUSE OF HANOVER.



help him. When Elizabeth was dead Cecil at once had James proclaimed king as James I., and sent messengers to him that he might prepare to come to England. No one made any difficulty, and James became king without any disturbance. So it came about quite peacefully that one king ruled over England and Scotland, not in the way that Edward I. had tried to bring it about, by the King of England conquering Scotland, but by Scotland giving a King to England.

James I. travelled slowly through England to London. He was delighted with everything he saw, for England was a much richer country than Scotland. He stayed at the houses of different nobles and gentlemen on the way, and they did all they could to gain his favour by showing him splendid hospitality. But the English were not as delighted with James as he was with them. He was a man who had studied a great deal, and could talk well and say witty things, but he did not behave with the dignity that the English thought fitting in a king. He was dirty and untidy in his dress; he had a big head and a great tongue that seemed too large for his mouth, and the courtly English gentlemen were shocked at his bad manners and his broad Scotch accent.

**The land is troubled with religious disputes.**—The first part of James I.'s reign was a good deal troubled by quarrels about religion. There were a great many people in England who thought that the English Church was still much too like the Church of Rome. They wanted to have simpler services, and they did not like having bishops. People who thought

thus were called Puritans. They were very strict in their ideas how men ought to live. They thought that gaiety and amusements were wicked. Before then Sunday had been the chief holiday of the people, and the day on which, after going to church, there had been games and amusements of all kinds in the villages and towns. But the Puritans said that on Sunday men should do nothing but pray and read the Bible, and it is from them that the strict notions about keeping Sunday have come. The Protestants in Scotland, who were called Presbyterians, had no bishops to ordain clergymen, and allowed each congregation to manage its affairs. The English Puritans hoped that James I., when he came to England, would make the English Church more like the Presbyterian. But it happened that James I. liked the English Church as it was, and would not make any changes, but instead of that set up bishops in Scotland too. So the Puritans were very discontented, and began to grumble and say that James I. was more friendly to the Catholics than to the Protestants. To please the Puritans James I. bade his ministers be stricter in carrying out the laws against the Catholics that had been made under Elizabeth. In those days it was thought that every one must be made to think the same about religion and go to the same services, and the Catholics who would not go to church were fined. Now it is thought better to let every man settle his religion for himself and go to the services he likes best, and there are Catholic churches as well as Protestant churches of all kinds.

But in James I.'s time only the services laid down in the Prayer Book of the Church of England might be used.

**The Gunpowder Plot, 1605.**—When the Catholics saw that the laws were going to be carried out strictly against them, they made a plot by which they hoped to be able to set up their religion again. They planned to blow up the House of Lords on the 5th November, when James I. went in state to open Parliament. They hired a cellar through which they could get into a cellar under the House of Lords. In this cellar some barrels of gunpowder were put, which were to be fired at the right moment by a soldier called Guy Fawkes. But one of the Catholic nobles who knew of this plot, wishing to save the life of one of his relations, who was a member of the House of Lords, sent a warning to him that some mischief was going to happen. A careful search was made to find out if anything was amiss, and on the evening of the 4th November Guy Fawkes was caught in the cellar watching over the powder. When the other conspirators heard this they tried to fly, but they were pursued, and all were caught in different parts of the country, and were put to death.

This plot made people very angry with the Catholics, and after it the laws against them were carried out very strictly. Hatred of the Catholics made the people remember their old hatred of Spain, the chief friend of the Catholics. James I. did not feel with the people in this. He thought it was time that the different



princes in Europe left off fighting with one another only because they were Catholics or Protestants. He thought himself a very great man, and he wanted to do great things, and bring about peace all over Europe. To do this he wished first of all to make friends with Spain, that then he and Spain might together make peace in Europe. James' desire to please Spain led him to do a very cruel and wicked thing.

Sir Walter Raleigh is killed, 1618.—One of the Englishmen whom the Spaniards most hated was Sir Walter Raleigh, because in the days of Elizabeth he had captured many rich prizes from them, and had encouraged the English to settle in America, which the Spaniards thought no one should do but themselves. When James I. first became king, Raleigh's name was mixed up in a plot against the government and he was imprisoned in the Tower. He was kept there for many years, and tried to make the time pass more quickly by writing a history of the world. But he grew very tired of prison, and after he had been there thirteen years, knowing that James I. was always in want of money, he told people that he knew of a rich gold mine up the river Orinoco, in South America. He said that if the King would let him, he would go there and find it out, and that with its gold James I. might become the richest king in Europe.

When James I. heard this he agreed to let Raleigh go, but told him that he must not harm a single Spaniard. So Raleigh set sail. When he came to the mouth of the Orinoco he was too ill to go up the river



and look for the mine himself, so he sent his son with one of his most trusted sailors, Keymis. They came upon a Spanish village, which they seized and plundered, and in the fight young Raleigh was killed. After this Keymis did not look for the mine any more, but came back to the ship. Raleigh, in his disappointment, spoke so angrily to Keymis that he in despair went into his cabin and shot himself. Then Raleigh had to go back to England without having found the mine. The Spaniards were very angry that his men had attacked their village, and to please them James I. consented to punish Raleigh. He was taken prisoner when he landed in England, and soon after beheaded.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### *THE QUARREL BETWEEN KING AND PARLIAMENT.*

**James I. tries to do without Parliament.**  
—James I. was very fond of money, which he spent so freely that he was always in need. Elizabeth had been very careful, and though her Court was splendid, she had not taxed the country heavily. Parliament had always been willing to give her what she wanted. But with James I. it was different. He thought that a king got his power from God, and that no one could interfere with him, and that he had no need to consult Parliament in everything.

In Elizabeth's time we do not hear much about disputes between the Crown and the Parliament. This was because Elizabeth tried to rule as her people wanted her to rule, for she wished them to love her. She did what she liked, and Parliament did not try to stop her, because the things she wanted were the same as the things which the people wanted. James I. thought that he could do as he liked, just as Elizabeth had done, but the people did not want the things which James I. wanted. So a quarrel began, which lasted all through the reigns of James and his son and

grandsons, which should be the stronger, the King or the Parliament.

James I. did not like having to ask Parliament for money, or listening to its advice. He made up his mind to try and do without Parliament, and when he wanted money he made his ministers get it for him in all sorts of unlawful ways. As long as Cecil lived things went on fairly well, but when Cecil died the King made a favourite first of one courtier, then of another, and they settled things as they liked, so that everything was in disorder, and the people grew more and more discontented.

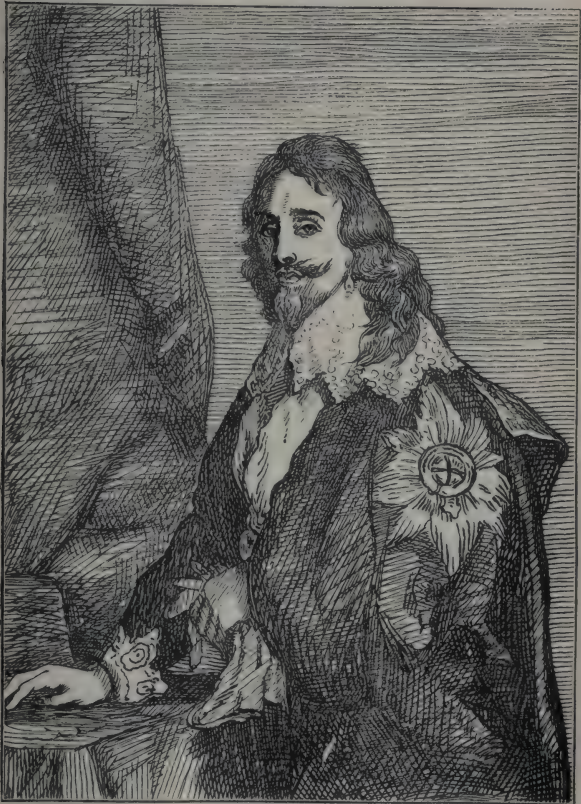
The King's chief favourite was George Villiers, a very handsome young man with pleasant manners. James I. made him Duke of Buckingham, and gave him so many presents that he became the richest man in England, and could make James I. do anything he liked. Things went on badly at the Court in those days, for men were not ashamed to do wrong things quite openly, and even the King and the ladies of the Court would take wine till they were quite drunken. The King was very free in his manner with his favourites; he would kiss and hug them; he called Buckingham Steenie, and the Prince of Wales was called Baby Charles, and they called James I. their dear dad and gossip.

**The Prince of Wales goes to Spain, 1623.**  
—James I. wished so much to be friends with Spain that he wanted his son Charles to marry the sister of the King of Spain. Philip IV., King of Spain, said he

was willing if James I. would treat the Catholics in England more kindly. But the English people did not wish this, and did not like the idea of the marriage at all. They did not want James I. to be friends with Spain, but they wanted him to help the Protestants abroad as Elizabeth had done. James I. did not care what the people wanted, and went on trying to arrange the Spanish marriage. Prince Charles grew impatient, and he persuaded his father to let him go with Buckingham in disguise to Spain, that he might get to know his bride and bring her off with him. They put on false beards and started as Tom and John Smith, and got safely to Madrid, where they knocked at the door of the English ambassador and made known who they were. Philip IV. received them very kindly, but his sister had no wish to marry a Protestant, and cried bitterly when they tried to persuade her. In spite of all that Charles could do, new difficulties were constantly made about the marriage. He tried to win over the lady herself, and jumped over a wall into a garden where she was walking, but she shrieked and ran away. At last Charles and Buckingham both grew angry with the Spaniards and came away from Madrid.

When they got back to England they made James, much against his will, give up his idea of being friends with Spain. After this it was settled that Charles should marry Henrietta Maria, sister of the King of France. Buckingham had everything his own way ; but he was not very wise, and his plans did not turn out well, and the people grew to dislike him more and more.

Charles I. becomes king, 1625.—When James I.



CHARLES I.

died and Charles became king, it did not make much



difference, for Buckingham really ruled the land. Charles I. was not like his father; he was tall and handsome, with grave and dignified manners. He was very ready to try and please people by promising to do what they asked him, but he never thought that he need keep his promises. When he had once made up his mind to anything, nothing would change him. As he had taken Buckingham for his friend and adviser, he would not see that Buckingham was leading him to quarrel with his people and bring misery on England.

When the new queen, Henrietta Maria, came to England, she brought a great many Catholic priests and servants with her, and the people did not like this. They were also thoroughly discontented with Buckingham. Parliament refused to give the King any money, because they were sure that it would not be spent wisely as long as Buckingham settled everything. So the King angrily dismissed Parliament, for he thought it had no right to meddle with his ministers.

Buckingham hoped that if he could win a great victory over Spain, the people would be so pleased that the Parliament would be ready to give him all the money he wanted. So he got together a great fleet and sent it against Spain. But nothing came of it, for everything was badly managed, and the soldiers and sailors died of sickness and the bad food that was given them.

**Buckingham is impeached.**—When Parliament met again they were more discontented than ever. The man who spoke out most boldly was Sir John



Eliot. He loved his country truly, and though he had once been a friend of Buckingham's, he had come to hate him for the harm which he was doing to England. Eliot knew how to speak, and used words which stirred men's hearts. He persuaded the Commons to *impeach* Buckingham, that is, to bring him to trial before the House of Lords for the bad way in which he ordered the affairs of the country. Buckingham was not afraid of Parliament. He came and sat before them with a proud face, wearing a splendid dress covered with jewels. But Eliot told of Buckingham's crimes in words that so moved his hearers that Charles was afraid what might happen to his favourite, and *dissolved* the Parliament, which means that the members were sent away to their own homes, and that there could be no other Parliament till the King gave orders for new members to be chosen.

Parliament makes Charles I. grant the Petition of Rights, 1628.—Charles I. then tried to get money without Parliament. He asked for loans all over the country, but though they were called loans, men knew that they would never get the money back again. Many would not pay, and some of those who would not were put into prison. They said that they were willing to pay if Parliament bade them, but that they would give no money otherwise.

Buckingham next made the King go to war with France as well as Spain. To get money for the war Parliament had to be called together again. Before Parliament would give any money they drew up a

“Petition of Right, in which it was said that no one was to be asked to pay taxes or loans without the consent of Parliament, and that no one was to be sent to prison without cause. Charles had to promise to agree to the petition before he could get any money.

**Buckingham is murdered, 1628.**—Buckingham was at Portsmouth getting ready to start with the fleet for France, when one day, as he came out of the room where he had been breakfasting, a man named John Felton met him, and saying, “God have mercy upon thy soul!” stabbed him in the breast. Buckingham fell dead to the ground. The terrible news was quickly told. His wife with shrieks of agony rushed out of her bedroom in her nightdress into a gallery which overlooked the place. Charles I. wept bitterly when he was told what had happened; but the English people rejoiced. When Felton was taken to the Tower the crowd shouted after him, “The Lord comfort thee!” He was beheaded for his crime, but men thought that he had freed the country from a tyrant.

**The King and the Commons quarrel.**—People hoped that things would go better after Buckingham’s death; but they were disappointed. The King still got money in ways which the Commons did not think right, and he quarrelled with them, too, about religion, for there were many Puritans in Parliament. When the King saw that they would do nothing but find fault with his bad government, he dissolved them again. He was so angry with Eliot that he sent him to prison. Eliot said that the Commons

might discuss what they liked, and that even the King had no power to stop them. He would not change his opinion to please Charles. So he stayed in prison, where he grew ill and died after three years and a half.

Charles I. governs without a Parliament, 1629-1640.—For eleven years Charles I. did not call a Parliament together. He thought he was right in refusing to let Parliament have the power which Eliot said it ought to have ; but in trying to do without it he was led to do many things that were clearly wrong. The two chief people who helped Charles to govern were Sir Thomas Wentworth, who was made Lord Strafford, and Laud, who was made Archbishop of Canterbury. Strafford was a stern proud man who loved to command. He thought that a king could do wiser things if he went his own way without asking Parliament than if he listened to its advice, and he was willing to do all he could to make Charles I. sole master in England. After a while Strafford went to Ireland as governor or Lord Deputy. There he kept order in the land, but he ruled harshly, and men hated him.

How Laud governed the Church.—Laud, Archbishop of Canterbury, was a great enemy to the Puritans. He wanted to make the services of the Church grander instead of simpler, and he was determined that all men should do as he wanted in religious matters. Charles I. allowed him to punish all those clergymen who would not obey him. They were

called up before the Star Chamber, where some judges sat together who were willing to do as Laud bade them. Men were fined, or put in prison, or whipped through the streets, or branded with hot irons, or had their ears cut off, because they would not think as Laud wanted them. The Puritans were so hardly treated that in their despair many of them decided to leave England and go to find a new home in America. They loved their country dearly, and it was a bitter grief to them to leave it, but more than anything else they wished to worship God in the way that seemed to them right. The first Puritans who went to America suffered many hardships, but this did not keep others from following them, to escape the tyranny in England. In ten years two hundred ships crossed the seas bearing men, both rich and poor, ignorant and learned, to find a new home in North America, where they founded a colony which they called New England.

Laud persuaded Charles to make the Scottish Church like the English, and a service-book like the English Prayer-Book was ordered to be used in Scotland. The Scots did not like this at all, and made ready to fight for their religion. Charles had no money and no soldiers to fight against the Scots, who crossed the border and marched into England. Charles I. at last made up his mind to call Parliament together. But when the Commons met, he was so angry at the way in which they spoke about his government that he sent them away again after twenty-three days.

Then he got an army together and marched against

the Scots. Strafford, who had come over from Ireland to help him in his difficulties, was with him. But the soldiers whom Charles had got together did not care to fight against the Scots, and Strafford saw that it was useless to go on with the war. Once more the King had to call Parliament together.

**Strafford is impeached, 1640.**—The Parliament met in November 1640. It is always known as the Long Parliament, because it sat so long a time. Strafford knew that he would have many enemies in Parliament, and he wished to keep away from London so as to be out of danger. But Charles I. did not like to be without him, and bade him come, promising him that the Parliament “should not touch a hair of his head.” So Strafford came to London, but the King did not keep his promise. The Commons knew that they had no enemy who could harm them as much as Strafford. On the day after he came to London they impeached him. Strafford was tried in Westminster Hall. The King and Queen came themselves every day to hear the trial. Strafford knew how to speak well, and said many clever things to persuade men that he had done what was right; but he could not change the opinion of the Commons. They condemned him to death as a public enemy. At first Charles doubted whether he should consent to let Strafford die, for he did not believe that he had done wrong, but thought that he had served him faithfully. An angry crowd gathered round the palace and shouted for justice to the traitor. The Queen in terror begged the King to let Strafford die, and Strafford



himself wrote to bid him do as the people wanted. But Strafford was disappointed when Charles gave the order for his death, and said when he heard it, "Put not your trust in princes." The next day he was beheaded, to the great joy of the people. Many came to London to see him die, and went back saying with triumph, "His head is off, his head is off!" Laud was impeached also, and kept in the Tower to be tried when the Commons had done other more needful work.

**Pym and Hampden lead the Commons.**—The Commons wished to be sure that they should be allowed to finish their work of getting the King to keep the laws as they thought he ought to do, and they made Charles I. promise that he would not dissolve them without their own consent. The leaders of the Commons were John Pym and John Hampden. They were both wise, brave men, and wished to have it settled once for all that the King was not to rule without the House of Commons. The Commons got Charles I. to consent to many new laws, which were to put an end to the things which Charles had been doing contrary to the old customs of the country. If Charles I. had kept these laws everything might still have gone well. But though he promised to keep them, he did not think that his promises bound him to give up the power which he thought the King of England had always had. When he was again strong enough he hoped to be able to govern as he wished ; he did not see that if he wished his people to



obey him he must try and do what they wanted. He went to Scotland and tried there to do everything that the Scots wanted; he wished to make them his friends, that they might help him against the English.

**The Grand Remonstrance, 1641.** — The Commons felt that they could not trust Charles, and Pym wished to show the nation too that it was impossible to trust him. So he had a paper written which was called the "Grand Remonstrance," which told the story of Charles I.'s bad government ever since he became king, and told, too, of the good laws which Parliament had made. It had to be decided whether the Commons would agree to this Remonstrance. There were some members who were friendly to the King, and a great many others who did not wish to quarrel with him, though they thought he had done wrong, and these members would not agree to the Remonstrance. All day and till past midnight the Commons talked about it, and they grew so excited and angry that at last men put their hands to their swords, and it seemed as if they would fight about it. But John Hampden arose and spoke some calm wise words which quieted them, and they voted and passed the Remonstrance, and ordered it to be printed that all men might read it.

When Charles I. came back to London and heard about the Remonstrance, he felt more angry with the Commons than ever. He decided to take prisoners five of the chief members, amongst whom were Pym and Hampden, and he hoped that this would frighten the

Commons. But when he sent his officer to seize the five members the Commons would not give them up. Charles I. had got about five hundred gentlemen at Whitehall as a guard to defend his person. He thought he would go himself with his guard and seize the members. The Queen pressed him to go when he hesitated, saying, "Go, coward, and pull these rogues out by their ears!" The Commons were warned that the King was coming, and the five members fled in haste to the city.

When Charles reached the House of Commons he left his guard at the door. He walked up to the chair of the Speaker, as the man is called who keeps order in the House of Commons. He stood in front of the chair and told the House that he had come to fetch the five members. He then asked the Speaker whether they were there. The Speaker fell on his knees and said, "May it please your Majesty, I have neither eyes to see nor tongue to speak in this place but as the House is pleased to direct me." "Well, well," answered Charles, "'tis no matter, I think my eyes are as good as another's." He looked round the House, and when he could not see the members he said, "Since I see all my birds are flown, I do expect from you that you will send them to me as soon as they return hither;" and so he left the House. All London was eager to save the five members from his hands, and Charles found that the city was on the side of the Commons and against him. He made up his mind to leave his Palace of Whitehall, and hoped that



WHITEHALL IN THE REIGN OF JAMES I.

out of London he might get soldiers round him and force Parliament to obey him.

The day after Charles left Whitehall the five members were brought back in triumph to Westminster. The river was covered with barges, and the streets were crowded with people shouting for joy.

**The Civil War begins, 1642.**—After this both Charles I. and the Parliament began to get ready to fight. Those of the Parliament who were friendly to Charles, and most of the House of Lords, went to join him at Oxford. He sent the Queen abroad with the crown jewels to get money to help him to raise an army. He had many friends in the country, for though men might think he had done wrong, there were many who thought it wicked to fight against their king. Those who loved the Church, too, were on the King's side; for most of the Commons were Puritans, and wished to have no bishops and to change many things in the Church. It was the farmers and trades-people, for the most part, who were on the side of Parliament, and the country gentlemen and the nobles who were on the King's side. The country gentlemen came to help the King mounted on their horses; they were bold, clever riders, and the people called them Cavaliers. They dressed gaily, and wore their hair long. The friends of the Parliament wore their hair short, and so got the name of Roundheads.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### *THE GREAT REBELLION.*

**The Scots help the Parliament.**—At first things seemed to go better for Charles than for the Parliament, for the Cavaliers knew better how to ride and fight than the Roundheads. But Pym persuaded the Scots to send an army to help the Parliament, and the Scots consented on condition that the Parliament should set up the Presbyterian religion in England as it was in Scotland. The Presbyterians had no bishops, and their services were much simpler than the English services. Parliament agreed, and made a solemn treaty with the Scots. But there were many amongst the friends of Parliament who did not wish to see all England Presbyterian. They thought that every man should be allowed to pray to God as he liked, and that any one could preach and teach the people. These men were called the Independents. They studied the Bible till they knew it almost by heart, and they thought all amusements wrong, and dressed in sober clothes and wore grave faces.

**Oliver Cromwell.**—The chief of the Independents was Oliver Cromwell, a Cambridgeshire gentle-

man. He was a very serious man, who led a very strict and sober life. He was a member of Parliament, and with his whole strength tried to help its cause. He saw that the soldiers of the Parliament were not so good as the King's soldiers, and he felt that the reason was that most of them were careless, idle men who were not in earnest. He made up his mind that in the troop of soldiers which he commanded he would have none but serious God-fearing men. He chose them carefully from amongst the Independents, and taught them to look upon their duties as soldiers as part of their religion. Men called his soldiers the Ironsides, and soon saw that they were the best in the army.

**Battle of Marston Moor, 1644.**—Before long Cromwell's Ironsides helped the soldiers of the Parliament to win a great victory. Together with the Scots, and some other of the Parliament's troops, they met the Cavalier army at Marston Moor, near York. Prince Rupert, the nephew of Charles I., was at the head of the Cavalier army. He was a bold soldier, and his horsemen trusted in him, and till now had always chased the foe before them. This time too he drove the Scots before him, but nothing could move Cromwell's Ironsides. Again and again they charged the enemy, and Cromwell wrote afterwards, "God made them as stubble to our swords." It was a short battle, but it was a bloody one. The Cavalier army was quite destroyed, and the cause of the Parliament triumphed in the north of England.

Still Charles I. had other soldiers left, and many



friends. There were many even amongst the friends of the Parliament who wanted to make peace with him, and hoped that now he would be willing to rule according to the laws. But Cromwell and others who thought like him believed that Charles I. never could learn to do right, and that war must go on till his cause was quite ruined. Cromwell wanted to make the army very strong, so that the war might soon be brought to an end. He persuaded Parliament to make great changes in the army, to give it new generals and new officers, and above all to be careful that the officers were serious men who led godly lives. Fairfax, a brave and earnest man, became chief commander, and Cromwell lieutenant-general under him.



PIKEMAN ABOUT 1630.

**The battle of Naseby, 1645.**—Soon it was seen what the new army could do. They met the King and his troops at Naseby, near Leicester, and there, after a terrible battle that lasted only three hours, the Cavaliers had to fly for their lives. Five thousand of them were killed or taken, and all their carriages, guns, and luggage were lost. Cromwell wrote to the Parliament, “This is none other but the hand of God, and to Him alone belongs the glory,” and he praised the honest soldiers who had fought so faithfully.

**Charles I. flees to the Scots.**—Charles I. escaped from the battle, but in his carriage the Round-heads found all his private papers, and from these they learned how little they could trust the King, the words that he had written were very different from what he had promised the Parliament. After this Charles I. could not get any large army together again. After trying in vain for some months, he made up his mind to trust to the Scots, who he thought were more likely to be friendly to him than the Parliament, and he fled northwards and joined the Scottish army.

Men hoped that now Charles would be willing to promise what Parliament wanted. But he would not learn that he must give way. At first he would answer nothing decided to the demands of the Scots and the Parliament; he hoped that soon his enemies would begin to quarrel with one another, for there were great differences between the Presbyterians and the Independents.

When the Scots found that Charles would not do

as they wanted they gave him up to the English. He was taken to a country house in Northampton, where he was treated with all the honour due to a king. He had many servants to wait upon him, and amused himself by reading and playing bowls and chess. For many months men went on trying to settle things with the King. He was brought to London, and lodged at Hampton Court. After a while he grew afraid that his life was in danger, for the army had grown more powerful than the Parliament, so he fled to Carisbrooke Castle, in the Isle of Wight.

The war begins again, 1648.—Now that Charles was in such an unhappy plight, many men who had gone against him before began to feel sorry for him and wished to help him. Charles had long tried to make his enemies quarrel, and at last he succeeded; for the Scots thought that the army, who were all Independents, had too much their own way in England, and agreed to fight for Charles, if he would promise to help the Presbyterians. So a Scottish army marched into England, and at the same time the King's friends rose in England.

Fairfax and Cromwell soon put down their enemies, but the army was very angry that Charles had in this way caused the war to begin again. For the army was not made up of common soldiers who loved fighting, but of farmers and shopkeepers, who had only come out to fight that they might be allowed to serve God in their own way. They now met together in prayer to try to find out why it was that God had

sent this curse of war upon them again. They said that it was their duty to see that "Charles Stuart, that man of blood," as they called him, was punished for all the blood he had shed and the mischief he had done.

Charles I. is brought to trial, 1649.—Even after his friends and the Scots had been beaten, Charles would not do as Parliament wanted. He hoped that help might come to him from abroad if he could only wait. But the army would wait no longer, and determined to act for itself. There were many men in Parliament who would not hear of doing any harm to Charles. So one day whilst Parliament was sitting, an officer called Colonel Pride came to the House with a troop of soldiers and turned out ninety-six members who were not willing to do as the army wanted. The sixty members who were left decided that the King must be tried for the ill he had done, and they named a court of 135 men to try him, of whom Cromwell was one. Fairfax, who had led the army against the King, would not come to try him. When his name was called in the court his wife cried out from the gallery, "He is not here, and will never be; you do wrong to name him."

Charles was brought to the palace at Whitehall, and was tried in Westminster Hall. It was a sad sight to see the King of England brought to trial before those stern men, who believed that they were punishing the enemy of God. His hair was grey and his face was careworn, but he still bore himself proudly like a king.

No one rose or took off their hat when he came into the Hall. He looked round contemptuously; he was convinced that no one had a right to judge him, that as king he could do no wrong. He smiled when they accused him of being a tyrant and a traitor. He would not defend himself, but only said that they had no right to judge him. After some days he was condemned to be beheaded. He had three days to get ready for death, and a good bishop, Juxon by name, was allowed to be with him.

**Charles I. is beheaded.**—Charles had done many wrong things in his life; but he showed that at least he could die nobly. He spent his last days in prayer and talk with Bishop Juxon, and wished to see no one but his children, for he said, "My time is short and precious." His two youngest children—Elizabeth, aged twelve, and the Duke of Gloucester, aged eight—were in England, and came to bid him farewell on the last day of his life. He gave his blessing to Elizabeth and said, "Sweetheart, you will forget this." "No," said she, "I shall never forget it whilst I live." He bade her not to grieve for him, and gave her messages for her mother and brothers. Then he took his little son on his knees and said, "Sweetheart, now they will cut off thy father's head, and perhaps make thee a king; but mark what I say, you must not be a king so long as your brothers Charles and James do live," and the child answered, "I will be torn in pieces first."

That last night the King slept soundly for about four hours. He awoke two hours before daybreak and



called his servant to him, saying, "I will get up, having a great work to do this day. This is my second marriage-day. I would be as trim to-day as may be, for before night I hope to be espoused to my blessed Jesus." It was a bitterly cold day, and he asked to



CHILDREN OF CHARLES I.—*After Vandyck.*

have a shirt more than usual, lest he should tremble with cold and men should think he trembled with fear.

At ten o'clock they came to fetch him to Whitehall, where he was to be beheaded. They walked through St. James' Park, and he bade them walk faster, for



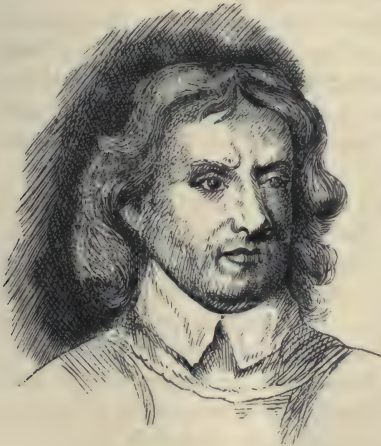
he was going to get a heavenly crown. At Whitehall they wished him to dine, but he only took some bread and wine. Then he prayed and stepped through the window upon the scaffold, which had been put up in the street. He had hoped to speak to the people before his death, but so many soldiers stood round the scaffold that the people could not come near enough to hear him. So he spoke only to those around him words which showed that he believed he had done right, and he said that he forgave those who had caused his death. Then he bade the executioner wait till he had prayed, when he would stretch out his hands. He asked if his hair was in the man's way, and put it all under his cap. Then he laid his head on the block, and after a moment stretched out his hands, and his head was cut off with one blow. The executioner held up his head to the people, who groaned when they saw it. The people pitied him, and after his death pity made them forget his faults till many came to look upon him as a saint and a martyr.

**The Cavaliers fight for Charles II.**—The army rejoiced at the death of the King; they thought that all their troubles were over. They did not mean to have another king, but they wished instead to have a Commonwealth, that is, they made the House of Commons alone rule the land. But many looked upon Charles I.'s eldest son, whom they called Charles II., as king; and there were risings against the Commonwealth in Ireland and Scotland. Cromwell first went to Ireland and made order there, but he treated the people

very sternly, and thousands were slain. Charles II. himself went to Scotland; he was young and foolish, but the Scots hoped to make him do what they wanted. When Cromwell came back from Ireland he marched into Scotland and met the Scottish army near Dunbar. His troops charged the Scots, raising the psalm, "Let God arise, and let His enemies be scattered!" and the Scots fled before him. Another Scottish army marched into England, taking Charles II. with them. Cromwell marched after them and reached them at Worcester. Here again he won a complete victory. He said it was "the crowning mercy" of the war, and he spoke truly, for after this he never had to fight again.

Charles II. flees from England, 1651.—Charles II. escaped from the battle and hid for a day in a wood. Then a gentleman, on hearing who he was, gave him shelter for a night in a barn. The next night he hid in another house, and the next day, with a faithful soldier, he climbed into an oak-tree, whence, hidden amongst the branches, they could see the country round. They took some beer and bread and cheese with them, and watched from their hiding-place soldiers looking in the wood for men who had fled from the battle. Afterwards Charles II. disguised himself as a servant, and with a lady riding on a pillion behind him, whom he pretended to be taking to visit a cousin, he rode towards the coast. After many adventures he succeeded in getting on board ship and escaping to France, where he joined his mother.

Oliver Cromwell becomes Lord Protector, 1653.—Cromwell and his soldiers thought that it was time there should be a new Parliament, but the Long Parliament would not dissolve itself. So one day Cromwell marched to Parliament House with his sol-



OLIVER CROMWELL.

diers. He left the soldiers outside and went into the House clad in plain grey clothes and worsted stockings. There he listened for some time to the talk of the members, and then he rose and began to blame them for their conduct, which he called selfish and unjust. When they began angrily to answer him he put his hat on

his head and said sternly, "Come, come, we have had enough of this, I will put an end to your prating. You should give place to better men." He called his soldiers to clear the House, and when all the members were out he locked the door, and there was an end of the Long Parliament.

Cromwell was sorry to do this violent deed, but he thought that it was necessary for the good of the land. Afterwards it was very difficult to get a better Parliament. At last men thought that it would be better to have one man at the head of the nation again. They would not have a king, but they made Cromwell "Lord Protector."

Cromwell tried to govern the land well, but he could not get a Parliament chosen which would do what he wanted. The truth was that most of the people did not think the same as the army either about religion or government. But the army was very strong, and the fear of it kept the land quiet. Cromwell kept good order at home, and he made foreign lands respect England; but he could not govern by means of Parliament, for men were so divided in opinion that it was hard to see how a Parliament could be chosen. So men saw that after overthrowing Charles I. because he did not rule according to the law, they were ruled by the army and its general, and had less freedom even than before.

**Cromwell dies, 1658.**—After he had been Protector five years Cromwell fell ill. He was only fifty-nine, but he was worn out by all the work which he

had done. Lying on his bed of sickness he prayed much to God, and at last passed away full of hope in God's grace, saying, "My work is done. Yet God will be with His people."

## CHAPTER XIX.

### *THE RESTORATION.*

Charles II. becomes king, 1660.—Whilst Cromwell lived there was some one who could keep order between all the different parties in England, but after his death all was disorder. His son, Richard Cromwell, became Protector; but he was an easy-going man, and did not know how to rule. It was so difficult to get a fixed government that men began to think that it would be better to have a king again. Now that Cromwell was gone there was no one to keep even the army together. Part of the army was in Scotland with General Monk, who thought that it would be best to have Charles II. for king. So he marched to London and gave orders that a free Parliament should be called. The people were delighted, and bonfires blazed in the streets. When the Parliament met, they decided at once to ask Charles II. to come to England. Every one but the army wished him to come, and as the army had no leader whom they could trust, they felt that they must give way.

The people received Charles II. with joy. When he



rode into London the streets were strewn with flowers, the houses were hung with bright tapestries, and the fountains ran with wine. But Parliament could not feel safe so long as the army was kept together. So the men were paid off and sent to their homes.

The Government was set up again just as it had been in the days of Charles I., and all that the Commonwealth had done was undone. Men were not to be allowed to worship God as they pleased, but all must belong to the English Church. The Puritans who would not go to the Church services were called *Dissenters*, because they *dissented* from the views of the English Church. They were punished for worshipping in their own way, and were not allowed to hold any public office.

Plague and fire of London.—Five years after Charles II. became king a terrible plague came upon London, brought about a great deal by the dirty and unhealthy state of the town. The people died by thousands. Every one who could fled from the city. There were no carriages to be seen in the streets, only the carts which went round to fetch the bodies of those who had died of the plague. Grass grew in the deserted streets, and the horrible silence was broken only by the tolling of the bell for the dead. Even the doctors and many of the clergymen of the English Church fled; the dissenting ministers showed more courage, and many of them went about bravely to comfort the sick and the dying.

The next year another terrible misfortune came upon

London. There was a great fire which lasted for three days and three nights. The weather was hot and the wind strong; the houses were built of wood and burned very quickly. It was impossible to put out the flames,



OLD LONDON BRIDGE, 1640.

and the fire was only stopped by blowing up houses and so making gaps over which the flames could not pass. Two-thirds of the city was burned. St. Paul's and many other churches were destroyed. Fortunately

there was then living a great architect, Sir Christopher Wren, who built the Cathedral of St. Paul's as it now is, and many other churches whose graceful spires adorn the city.

The character of Charles II.—If Charles II. had been a good or a wise man he would have easily been able to please the English people. But he had no wish to govern as his people wanted. He thought just as much of his power as a king as his father, Charles I., but he was not in earnest like him. What he cared most about was to have plenty of money, and to amuse himself with his favourites. He was a clever talker and said witty things, and had free pleasant manners, so that the people who had to do with him always liked him. The London people liked to see him wandering in St. James' Park feeding his ducks and playing with his dogs. But though he was amiable he was very selfish, and cared more for his own pleasure than for the good of his people. During the Commonwealth, when the Puritans had had their own way in England, men had led quiet and sober lives. It was the fashion to wear sad-coloured clothes, to have a grave face and speak with a serious voice. Those whose hearts were far from serious pretended to be serious, and had the words of the Bible often on their lips. When Charles II. became king they were delighted to throw off their seriousness, and to run after pleasure of every kind. Charles II. set them the example. He gathered round him at his Court gay young men and beautiful women. They spent the day

in feasting and drinking and gambling, and many kinds of wickedness. The people were not better than their king. They scoffed at the religion of the Puritans, and rejoiced that they were again able to amuse themselves. But very often they forgot to seek only after those amusements which are harmless, and ran into vice of all kinds.

**The work of the Puritans.**—The Puritans made life too sad and serious, but at least they wished to teach men to lead pure and holy lives. Soon it seemed as if their teaching was quite forgotten. But though the Puritans were persecuted and forced to hide themselves, some were doing work which will last as long as the English language lasts. A learned scholar called John Milton, during the time of the Commonwealth, had done all he could to help those who wished to give the people liberty. Now he was poor and persecuted, an old blind man. But in these days of suffering he wrote the “Paradise Lost,” one of the noblest poems in the English language, which tells in majestic words the tale of man’s fall. Another man, John Bunyan, who was put in prison for his religion, wrote whilst in prison the “Pilgrim’s Progress,” which from that day to this has been read with delight by thousands, both old and young. So the best thoughts of the Puritans are taught to men in all times by these great and good works.

**Parliament under Charles II.**—At first the men who were chosen by the country to sit in Parliament were very willing to please the King, for the

whole country had tired of the rule of the Puritans. Parliament hoped that Charles II. would rule as they thought right. They honoured their king, but they thought a great deal of their own power too. They did not wish Charles II. to have a standing army, that is, an army which is always kept ready to fight, for they saw that Cromwell by means of his army had been able to make Parliament obey him. A standing army was just what Charles II. wanted. When he was in France, before he became king, he had seen what a great king Lewis XIV. of France was, and how because he had great armies he was able to do just as he liked. Charles II. wanted to have his own way in England, and was always trying how far he could get his own way in spite of Parliament. He was very careful not to quarrel too much with the Commons, for whatever happened he did not wish to lose his crown and be driven out of England again. When the Commons were very discontented with him he would do something to please them and put them in a good humour again. He was very clever in managing never to have a real quarrel.

**Charles II. and Lewis XIV.**—Charles II. was always wanting money to spend on his amusements and his favourites. But Parliament did not care to give it him to be wasted in this way, and sometimes, when he would not do what they wanted, they would not give him any money at all. When Lewis XIV. saw how much Charles II. needed money, and how he wanted to be free from his Parliament, he



offered to help him. Lewis XIV. was a very clever man, who wished to make France the greatest and strongest power in Europe. Spain was so weak now that there was no one who could prevent Lewis XIV. from doing just as he liked, unless England joined with some of the smaller nations in Europe to hinder him. This was what Lewis XIV. wished to prevent. He promised to pay Charles II. some money every year if Charles II. would not do anything to stop his plans. They made a secret treaty together, of which the English knew nothing, and Charles II. got money from Lewis XIV.

It was a disgraceful thing for England that her king should be paid by a foreign king to be his friend. Though the English did not know this, they could see well enough that other nations in Europe thought very little of England, and they began to remember how different it had been in the days of Oliver Cromwell, when there was order at home and all Europe had respected England. Once when the Commons were very discontented, Charles II. to please them arranged a marriage between Mary, the eldest daughter of his brother James, Duke of York, and Prince William of Orange, the ruler of Holland, who was the great enemy of Lewis XIV. This made Lewis XIV. angry, and Charles II. had to write him humble letters before he could get money again.

Charles II. tries to befriend the Catholics. —Charles II. in his heart was more a Catholic than a Protestant, but he did not dare to become a Catholic



openly. Still he thought he might do something to befriend the Catholics, and he felt that he could only help them if he helped the Dissenters as well. But Parliament did not wish the Catholics to be allowed to worship God in their own way. The people in England for the most part hated the Catholics, and hated them the more because Charles II. tried to befriend them, for they thought that he wished to get the Catholics to help him to govern without Parliament. They were still more frightened when a man called Titus Oates came forward and told how he had found out a Popish plot to kill the King and make the Catholics rulers in the land. Most likely Oates' story was quite untrue, but the people were so angry with the Catholics that they were ready to believe any stories against them. They made a hero of Oates, and many of the Catholics were tried and were put to death because of stories which he told.

The Commons try to exclude James of York from the throne.—Soon after this supposed plot was discovered, Charles II. dissolved his Parliament and called a new one. The people were so frightened at the Catholics that they sent men to sit in Parliament who were eager to put them down in every way. Charles II.'s brother James, Duke of York, was a Catholic, and as Charles II. had no children, James would be king after him. Parliament now made a plan to prevent James from being king. When Charles II. heard what Parliament was doing he dissolved it. But when he called another Parliament it began to do the

same thing. So he dissolved that and called a third, and then he dissolved that too, and made up his mind to do without Parliament for a time.

The rage against the Catholics led to many cruel deeds. Catholics were thrown into prison, and brought to trial and condemned to death on the evidence of stories falsely invented against them. They died saying to the last that they were innocent; but the people heard their words with shouts of anger and scorn. However, after the first fear was over, the people began to pity these innocent sufferers. One unhappy nobleman, Lord Stafford, was said to have had a part in the plot, and though he was an old and worthy man he was condemned to die. But when on the scaffold with his last breath he said that he was innocent, the people were moved to pity him, and cried out, "God bless you, my lord!" "We believe you, my lord!"

Men in England now began to divide themselves into two parties, according to their different opinions how the government should be carried on. One party, who were called the Whigs, wished to prevent James, Duke of York, from becoming king, and were on the whole inclined to befriend the Dissenters. The other party, who were called the Tories, wished James to become king, and so their enemies said that they were friendly to the Catholics. The Whigs and the Tories were always struggling to see which could get their own way. Charles' ministers were sometimes Whigs and sometimes Tories. They were mostly men who only wanted to get importance for

themselves, and did not care for the good of the people. Charles II., as he grew older, only grew more selfish, and so the land was badly governed and the people murmured.

**The Ryehouse Plot, 1683.**—At first, when every one was terrified by the stories which Oates told about the Popish Plot, most people were in favour of the Whigs. But Charles II. got money enough from Lewis XIV. to make him able to do for four years without a Parliament, and during these years he did a great deal to put down the Whigs. Then a plot was found out which some of Cromwell's old soldiers had made to seize Charles II. and James near a farm called the Ryehouse, which they had to pass on a journey. This was thought to be a plot of the Whigs, and many of them were put in prison. The English people have never approved of plots, so they turned against the Whigs and allowed the King to get rid of some of the chief men among them.

**James II. becomes king, 1685.**—After this Charles II. had no more fear of the Whigs, and did as he pleased till his death, two years after the Ryehouse Plot. He died after a few days' illness, and his brother became king as James II. without any difficulty.

**The Duke of Monmouth tries to become king, 1685.**—The people accepted James II., but they were not at all pleased to have a Catholic king. Besides, James II. was a hard, cruel man whom nobody loved. Still the Tories hoped that he would

keep the promises he had made, and rule according to the laws, and do nothing against the English Church.

Amongst the Whigs there were some who hoped to turn out James II. and make the Duke of Monmouth king. He was a young man whom Charles II. was very fond of, and people said that Charles II. had been secretly married to his mother, and that he was the rightful king. He was handsome and had pleasant manners, and the common people were very fond of him. He was in Holland when Charles II. died, and four months afterwards he set sail from Holland with some Whigs who had fled there for safety, and landed in Dorsetshire. A good many peasants and small farmers joined Monmouth; but the gentry would not help him till they saw how things were likely to turn out. James II. sent an army against him. Monmouth was afraid that his army of peasants would not be able to fight against trained soldiers, but he thought that he might beat them if he took them by surprise. So he led his men to attack the King's troops on the marsh of Sedgemoor early one misty morning. A pistol chanced to go off, and alarmed the troops. Monmouth's men lost themselves in the mist, and though they fought bravely were soon beaten. Monmouth himself fled at once, leaving to their fate those who were fighting so bravely for him. He was found hiding in a ditch, and taken prisoner to London. James II. had no pity for him, and he was beheaded. Since that day no battle has been fought in England.

**Jeffries punishes the rebels.**—James II. sent Chief-Justice Jeffries to punish all those who had helped Monmouth. Jeffries was a cruel and violent man, who was willing to do anything James bid him. He knew that to please James II. he must be cruel to the rebels. He made his way through all the villages from which peasants had gone to fight for Monmouth. The unhappy men were seized and hanged on the village greens. In all 350 were put to death, 800 were sold as slaves beyond the sea, and many more were whipped and imprisoned. One gentlewoman, Lady Alice Lisle, was put to death only because she had given shelter in her house to one of the rebels. Another poor woman for the same fault was burned to death. It was useless to beg James II. for mercy; he seemed to love the cruel work. One of his courtiers, Lord Churchill, who knew him well, said that his heart was harder than marble itself. Jeffries, too, delighted in his cruel work. He raged at the unhappy prisoners so as to frighten them, and between the trials he feasted and drank and joked with his friends. James II. made him Lord Chancellor as a reward for his cruelty.

**James II. tries to set up Catholicism.**—James soon showed the people that he did not mean to keep the promises which he made when he became king. He favoured none but Catholics. Little by little he took Catholics as his ministers, and made Catholics the chief officers in his army, though it was against the laws for Catholics to hold any post. But James II. thought that the king might put aside the



laws if he liked. Then he published what was called a Declaration of Indulgence, which excused both the Catholics and the Dissenters from the punishments which the laws set against them. James II. hoped that in this way he would make the Dissenters his friends. But the Dissenters knew that James II. had no right to do away with laws which Parliament had made. They loved the liberty of their country as well as their own religious liberty, and did not care to be kindly treated by a king who broke the laws. So James II. did not please the Dissenters, and he angered the Tories, who till now had been his firm friends, for they loved the Church of England more even than they loved the King.

James II. was angry when people did not like the Declaration of Indulgence, and he ordered that it should be read in all the churches on two Sundays. But the clergy would not do this, and seven of the bishops drew up a paper in which they begged the King to take back his order. James was furious at this, and the bishops were bidden to come before his council. Thousands of people waited outside eager to know what would happen to them. When they came out guarded by soldiers, men in the crowd fell on their knees to pray aloud for them. They were taken to a barge to go down the river to the Tower. Men pressed after them, even standing up to their waists in the water to ask for their blessing; and all the way to the Tower boats crowded round the barge full of people shouting, "God bless your lordships!" All England took the



part of the bishops, and was full of pity for them. The bishops themselves were sad to feel that they had displeased the King, for they had always believed and taught that it was the duty of all men to obey and honour the King as God's servant. But they stayed firm, for they believed that it was their first duty to



TOWER OF LONDON.

try and prevent anything being done which could harm the Church.

The seven bishops are tried, 1688.—The seven bishops were brought to trial, and James II. and his ministers did everything they could to make sure that they should be punished. The trial was held in Westminster Hall, which was crowded with people; great

and small, rich and poor, came to see what would happen, and those who could not get into the hall crowded the yard and the streets outside. First the King's lawyers spoke to say all they could against what the bishops had done. Then the bishops' lawyers spoke to show that they had done nothing wrong. The discussion went on till it was dark. Then the twelve men who formed the jury, and who had to decide, according to what they had heard, whether the bishops were guilty or not, were shut up in a room together to make up their minds; they might not come out till they had decided. Every one else went to their own homes, but the jury stayed together discussing all night. At ten o'clock the next morning the court came together to hear what the jury had decided. There was a greater crowd than ever; but in that great crowd there was a breathless silence to hear what the jury would say. When it was known that they declared the bishops "Not guilty," a nobleman sprang up and waved his hat. In a moment the hall was filled with a shout which seemed to make the roof crack. The crowd outside heard the shout, and set up a shout in answer which spread to the boats on the river. Men sobbed aloud for joy, and all the church bells set up a merry peal. Horsemen carried the good news all over the country. That night the city blazed with bonfires, the windows were lit up with rows of candles, and round the bonfires men crowded to drink the health of the bishops and confusion to the Papists.

## CHAPTER XX.

### *THE REVOLUTION.*

**William of Orange is invited to England.**  
—Whilst the bishops were in the Tower a son had been born to James. This was his first son, but he had already two daughters, who had been brought up as Protestants. The elder, Mary, was married to William of Orange, the ruler of Holland. The second, Anne, was married to Prince George of Denmark, and lived in England. Till now the English had been willing to put up with James II., because he was getting old, and they thought that he could not live long, and that after his death Mary would be queen, and the land would be again governed by a Protestant, and according to the laws. But now that James II. had a son all these hopes were gone. The child would be brought up a Catholic, and would rule England as his father had done. Men in their disappointment said that he was not really the child of James II., but a pretended child who had been brought into the palace by the priests ; and so the Prince got the name of the Pretender, which he always afterwards kept.

As there was no chance of Mary and William of

Orange coming to England peaceably, men determined to ask them to come with an army. The Whigs had long looked upon William as their best friend, for he was a firm Protestant and a bitter enemy of Lewis XIV. of France. But William was a very careful man. The one thing that he wanted to do was to stop Lewis XIV. from growing so powerful that all Europe would have to do what he wanted. William seemed a small man to do any harm to so great a king as Lewis XIV.; but though William was neither rich nor powerful, he was full of courage. He was sure that what he wanted to do was right; and though it might seem difficult, nothing could turn him away from it. He wished that he and his wife might become King and Queen of England, because then England would help him to make war against Lewis XIV. But he would not go to England unless he was sure that the people wanted him, for he did not wish to waste time by making war against James II. So he said that he must have an invitation signed by some of the great English peers before he would come. The very day the trial of the bishops was ended, a letter was sent to William signed by seven of the chief men of England, both Whigs and Tories, asking him to come and protect the liberties of England against James II.

**James II. loses his crown, 1688.**—William did not bring a large army with him to England; he trusted to the help of the English. He landed at Torbay, in Devonshire, and marched to Exeter. He said that he had come to help the English to get a free

Parliament together, and that afterwards he would do as the Parliament thought best.

At first James II., who was very obstinate, could not be made to believe that he was in any danger. The only thing he did made the people more angry with him than ever, for he sent for some Irish soldiers. He had an army which Charles II. had begun to get together, and which he had made larger, though it was against the law for the English king to have a standing army. But the English soldiers were very angry at the Irish soldiers being joined to their army, for they looked upon the Irish as Papist barbarians.

Only when William was really in England did James II. at last see his danger. Then he began to make many promises, in hopes of winning back his people's love. But it was too late, for no one would believe him. He sent his army to meet William, and set out to follow it himself. Every day he heard that more and more people had gone to join William. When he came to the army, he found that he could not even hope that his soldiers would be true to him. Some of his officers stole away in the night to go to William. Full of despair, he bade the army march back to London. When he got to London he found that even his daughter Anne had fled. He saw that he could not drive William out of the land, and he would not make friends with him. So he first sent his queen and his child to France. On a cold windy night the Queen stole down the back-stairs at Whitehall, led by a French gentleman, whilst another gentle-



man carried the baby wrapped in his cloak. They rowed across the river in an open boat, and there they had to wait for a coach. The Queen dared not go into a house for fear she should be found out. She cowered for shelter from the storm under a church tower. Fortunately the baby was quiet and did not cry. Then they drove to Gravesend, where a ship was waiting which bore them safely to France.

**Terror reigns in London.**—As soon as James heard that the Queen was safe, he fled himself to join her. In the morning, when it was found that the King was gone, all London was in terror, for he had left no one to keep order, and William was still some way off. Some of the lords and bishops who were in the city met together, and tried to keep order till William came. But when night came the mob turned out of their houses, knowing that there was no one to keep them from doing what they liked. With shouts of “No Popery!” they plundered and destroyed the Roman Catholic churches, and many houses belonging to Catholics. Next morning everything possible was done by the lords to keep the city quiet, but it was not an easy task. The cruel judge Jeffries was found hiding in a low tavern, disguised as a common sailor. The people rushed upon him with savage fury. They longed to tear him in pieces, and he was only with difficulty saved from their hands. He begged to be taken to prison, for he felt that only there could he be safe from the fury of the mob. A large number of soldiers were needed to take him safely to



the Tower, whilst the mob followed him with howls of rage.

William came on to London as quickly as he could. But before he reached London he heard that James had been stopped as he was trying to leave England, and brought back. William would have been much better pleased if James II. had got safely to France, for then it would have been much easier to bring order into England again. James II. was sent to Rochester, whilst William entered London; and James was so frightened lest any harm should happen to him that he fled again, and this time got safely to France. Lewis XIV. received him very kindly, led him to his wife's room, and said to the Queen, "Here is a gentleman whom you will be glad to see." Lewis gave James the beautiful Palace of St. Germain's to live in with his wife.

William and Mary become king and queen, 1689.—The first thing which William did was to call a Parliament. When the Parliament met it offered the crown to William and Mary, who were to rule the land together. Mary came to England, and the people welcomed her gladly; she had bright, pleasant manners, and a kindly heart, so that she was soon much beloved.

William and Mary sign the Declaration of Rights.—Parliament was very careful to make it impossible for William and Mary to get the same power which the Stuart kings had got. The Revolution, as the making William and Mary king and queen

instead of James is called, gave Parliament the chief power in the land. In William and Mary's reign Parliament made laws which made it impossible for any king ever again to rule without it.

Before William and Mary were crowned they were asked by Parliament to sign a paper called the Declaration of Rights. This paper said that it was unlawful for the king to raise money or keep a standing army unless Parliament allowed him, and that the king might not put aside any law without the consent of Parliament. These were just the things which the Stuart kings had done, and Parliament was not going to allow any king to do them again.

**How the power of Parliament had grown.**—We have now come to the end of the great struggles which disturbed England. What these struggles did was to make Parliament the first power in England. The Great Charter had settled that the king might not take money except by the consent of the Great Council, as Parliament was then called. But in one way or another ever since the kings had tried to get money as they wanted it without asking Parliament. Still the power of Parliament had grown in spite of the kings.

Edward I. had arranged that all classes of the people should send men to speak for them in Parliament. But the Wars of the Roses brought such trouble into the land, that to escape from disorder men were willing that the Tudor kings should get great power into their own hands. For a time it seemed as if the

king would always be the chief power in England. But when the Stuart kings tried to do as they liked without caring what the people wanted, the English showed that they were ready to fight for their liberties, and Charles I. was put to death. For a time there was no king, but that was not what the people wanted. The Stuarts came back, but when they showed that they had not learned to listen to the will of the people, they were again driven away, though this time without war, for the whole people wished to be rid of them.

How England is governed.—Since William and Mary came to the throne there have been no great changes in the government of the land. So I would like you to try and understand clearly what the government was in those days, and still is. Parliament is divided into two Houses, the House of Lords and the House of Commons. In the House of Lords sit all the great Lords or Peers, as they are called, and the Bishops. In the House of Commons sit members chosen by the different counties and towns to speak for them or represent them. The men who choose the members of Parliament are called electors. Every one is not an elector; only those who paid a certain sum of money as rent for a house used to be electors; now all householders and lodgers have a right to vote.

When a new law is made by Parliament, the law, which is printed on paper and called a bill, has to be read three times and be talked about by the Commons before it is settled. If more members vote for it than against it, the

bill is passed; but if more vote against it than for it, the bill is given up. When a bill has passed the House of Commons it has to go to the House of Lords, and if the Lords do not think it a good bill it is amended. When a bill has passed both the House of Lords and the House of Commons, it still has to get the sovereign's consent before it becomes law, but now this consent is never refused.

We have often spoken about the king's ministers. These are men chosen by the king to look after the different parts of the Government. Some take care of the money matters of the Crown. The Minister for Foreign Affairs writes all the letters to foreign princes, and makes it his business to understand all about foreign countries. The Lord Chancellor is the chief of the lawyers. Then there are ministers whose business it is to look after the army and after the navy, and several others besides. The chief minister is called the Prime or First Minister; he is generally the First Lord of the Treasury. The most important ministers meet together whenever the Prime Minister calls them, to discuss what they must bring before Parliament; when they meet together they are called the Cabinet Council. It is with the Cabinet that the king decides what shall be done. The king has also a larger council, made up of the chief men in the land, which is called the Privy Council. But it was found that the Privy Council was too large to discuss all the things that had to be done, and so it came about that the Cabinet Council became the more important.

At first the king could choose as his ministers the

men he liked best. The only thing that Parliament could do was to impeach a minister, as it impeached Strafford, if he did things that were against the law. But Parliament grew so strong after the Revolution that the king found it wise to choose as his ministers the men in whom Parliament most trusted. This was what Parliament struggled for during the next reigns, until it came about, as it is now, that no one can be Prime Minister unless the greater number of the members of Parliament trust in him, and are willing to do as he wishes. When Parliament does not like a minister, the king has to send him away and get another whom Parliament will like. The most important change that men came to strive after in time was that Parliament should be made to represent the people better. There were some big towns which had no members, and some very small towns which had members, and there were a great many well-to-do people who had no vote. Parliament was the chief power in the land, but it was not the people's Parliament, for the great landowners could really get the members chosen whom they wanted.

**William's difficulties.**—William did not find it easy to please the English. He was a cold, stern man, and did not readily make friends. He had bad health, and did not care for grandeur, but liked to live quietly and work hard. The people, on the other hand, liked to see a gay court, and to have a king who was friendly and pleasant to every one. Besides this, though William had come to free England from the bad rule of

James II., he did not wish to let Parliament do just as it liked. He was willing to obey the laws, but he thought that the king should have the chief power in the land. So at first there were a good many troubles, and many men, who were called Jacobites, began to plot to get James II. back again as king.

**James II. comes to Ireland, 1689.**—William had most trouble with Ireland. The Irish had not changed their religion at the time of the Reformation, and were still Catholics. They wished to have James II. for king, because he was a Catholic. But the English who had settled in Ireland were Protestants, and they held by William and Mary. So the Irish and the English fought together. When James II. saw how many friends he had in Ireland, he went there himself. Lewis XIV. gave him soldiers and money, for he hated William, and wished to give him all the trouble he could. Lewis XIV. treated James II. very kindly, and wished him well. He said when they parted, "I hope we are about to part never to meet again in this world, but if any evil happens to you, you will always find me the same friend as before."

**Londonderry besieged, 1689.**—At first everything went well with James in Ireland. Nearly the whole country was willing to take him for its king. Most of the English settlers who were on William's side had gone for safety to the town of Londonderry, which had strong walls to defend them from their enemies. James sent his troops to take Londonderry. But the English made up their minds to fight to the



last rather than give up the city. At first the Irish soldiers tried to make holes in the walls so as to get in and attack the English, and they threw bombs over the walls, which burst and set fire to the houses. But the English rushed out of the city time after time and drove them back. Then the Irish decided to wait till starvation should make the English give way. They allowed no food to go in, and let no one come out of the city. Soon the people inside began to suffer terribly. Their food came to an end; dogs and rats were the best things they had to eat; many lived on tallow and salted hides, which they sucked. They grew so weak that they could hardly stand on the walls to fight, and thousands died of disease brought on by the want of food. Yet they did not lose courage, and every day they met in the Cathedral to pray to God to send them help. They would not give in, for they trusted in their friends outside. At last the help came. Three ships sent from England managed to make their way up the river on which Londonderry was built, in spite of the Irish, who lined the banks of the river. The unhappy men inside the city watched them in an agony of hope. They all rushed down to meet them when they reached the city in safety. The ships brought plenty of food to refresh the starving people; the siege had lasted a hundred and five days, when the Irish gave up in despair and marched away from the walls.

William wins the battle of the Boyne, 1690.—James behaved so foolishly in Ireland that

he lost many friends, for he showed favour only to Catholics, and did not try to please the Protestants. At last William was able to leave England and come to Ireland to fight against him.

James, with his army of French and Irish, was camped on the river Boyne when William came upon him. During the night William and his army camped on the other side of the river. The next morning William's army crossed the river in different places and attacked the enemy. Many of the Irish fled at once, throwing away their arms and their cloaks without striking a blow. But a brave officer put himself at the head of the Irish cavalry, and shouting, "On, on, my lads! To glory, to glory!" led them to make a bold attack. All was smoke and dust and din, and the fight was very fierce. William swam his horse across the river, and led his men into the thickest of the fight. Danger always raised his spirits, and his own courage and brave words gave his men new courage. Though his health was so weak, he was that day on horseback for nineteen hours. He never shunned the most dangerous places, and balls grazed him several times.

James watched the battle from a safe place, but when he saw that his troops were losing, and that William was gaining the victory, he fled away from those who were fighting for him, and galloped towards Dublin. Early next morning he fled from Dublin, and found a ship to take him to France. After this the Irish were soon put down and made to take William

for their king. But unfortunately the English settlers managed to get all the power into their hands, and the Catholics, who were by far the greatest number in Ireland, were not allowed any part in the government. The English would not learn to treat the Irish fairly, and so the troubles of the unhappy country did not come to an end.

The Highlanders fight for James in Scotland, 1689.—When William and Mary became King and Queen of England, the Scottish Parliament met together and agreed to ask them to rule over Scotland too. But James had some friends in Scotland still. The chief of these was James Claverhouse, Viscount Dundee, a good soldier, but a fierce and cruel man. He persuaded the brave tribes who live in the Highlands to help him. The Highlanders were fond of fighting, and they had not suffered so much from the bad rule of James as the other Scots. General Mackay was sent from Edinburgh with an army to fight against the Highlanders. In the narrow mountain pass of Killiecrankie the Highlanders late one evening fell upon Mackay's army. They came with such a terrible rush, and with such frightful yells, that Mackay's soldiers fled before them. But a chance ball struck Dundee, and he fell dying from his horse. His last words were, "How goes the day?" A man who was holding him up answered, "Well for King James, but I am sorry for your lordship." "If it is well for him," answered Dundee, "it matters the less for me," and he never spoke again. The Highlanders had won

the battle, but it did them little good, for they had lost their leader. After this they were little by little made to look upon William as their king. Forts were built amongst the mountains to keep the wild Highlanders in order, and after a while William sent some money to be divided amongst the chiefs, and said that he would forgive all who would come before a fixed day and swear to be true to him. All came to swear, but through a mistake MacIan of Glencoe came six days too late. He was the head of a very fierce tribe, and some of the chief Scottish lords who were at William's Court thought this would be a good excuse to make an end of MacIan and his men. They told William that MacIan had not sworn by the right day, but they did not tell him that he had come afterwards, and they got William to sign an order for the punishment of MacIan and his men. William had no idea how they meant to carry out this order.

**The Highlanders are massacred at Glencoe, 1692.**—MacIan and his men lived in a little valley called Glencoe in the mountains. One day about a hundred soldiers came to the valley, and saying that they came as friends, asked for food and lodging. The Highlanders are always hospitable, and they did all they could to make the soldiers comfortable. For twelve days the soldiers feasted and drank with them, and talked and played cards over their peat-fires at night. Then one morning early, while the Highlanders were still asleep, the soldiers got up and armed, and began to murder them in their houses. Old MacIan, his wife, and

about thirty more were murdered. The rest fled over the snow-covered hills. But many escaped from their enemies only to die of cold and hunger on the hills; old men and women, with babies in their arms, lay down to die in the snow. The cruel soldiers burned and robbed their homes, and drove away their horses and their flocks. It was some years before people got to know about this cruel deed; every one heard of it with horror, and William sent away from his service the man who had planned it. In the rest of Scotland there was peace. There were no more bishops set up, and the Presbyterians were allowed to govern the Church in their own way.

The war between William and Lewis XIV., 1689–1697.—After William became king he got England to join the other princes in Europe who were fighting against Lewis XIV. The Emperor, the King of Spain, and several German princes joined with William in making what was called the Grand Alliance, and they all agreed to fight to prevent Lewis XIV. from getting more lands and more power. But though there were so many against him, Lewis XIV. had such fine armies and such clever generals, that he was able to prevent his enemies from doing him much harm. He tried to help James to become King of England again, so as to give William trouble at home. A French fleet was sent against England, and beat the English fleet off Beachy Head. Then Lewis XIV. made a plan to send James with an army to England. There were so many Jacobites in England who wished



to have James back, that Lewis XIV. hoped it would be easy to turn out William.

**The battle of La Hogue, 1692.**—Lewis XIV. even hoped that the English fleet would not be true to William, and would let the French fleet get to England in safety. William was then in Holland; but Mary wrote a letter to the fleet, which the admiral, Russell, read to all the officers, saying that she had heard many stories about the fleet not being true to William and herself, but that she would trust to them to fight their best. After this letter all were eager to show how bravely they would fight the French. They met the French fleet off La Hogue, and went boldly into the battle. One of the first English officers who was wounded would not be carried below, but as he lay dying on the deck grasped his sword, and said with his last breath, "Fight the ship as long as she can swim." The battle raged for five days, and the English won a great victory. Sixteen French men-of-war were destroyed. This was the first great battle which Lewis XIV. lost. After this he did not try any more to land an army in England. William went every year to fight against Lewis on the borders of France and the Netherlands. But the war cost a great deal of money, and each side grew weary of it, for neither got any good from it. So at last peace was made, and Lewis XIV. promised to give up helping James, and to treat William as King of England.

**William is not happy in England.**—The war with France cost a great deal of money, and as



William could not get any money except what Parliament would give him, he was obliged to do a great many things to please Parliament so as to get the money he wanted. Parliament in this way got more and more power for itself. William had a great deal of trouble with his Parliaments, and they made him do many things which he did not like. He was not happy in England; he could not trust any of his ministers, for they were only half true to him. Many of the chief men in England went on writing to James, and trying to keep friends with him, for they thought it quite likely that he might become king again. Every one thought only of himself, and very few really worked for the good of their country. Men were ready to do anything for power or for money. All this made William dislike England, and the people did not like him. Then to his great sorrow his wife Mary died. He had always loved her and trusted her, and the English had loved her too. After her death they looked upon William more as a stranger than ever. William felt so grieved by the little love they showed him, that he almost made up his mind to give up his crown and go back to Holland. But one of the wisest of his ministers, Lord Somers, persuaded him to stay.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### *THE WAR OF THE SPANISH SUCCESSION.*

Lewis XIV. makes his grandson King of Spain, 1700.—For a long time Lewis XIV. had been trying to arrange that his grandson should become King of Spain. The King of Spain at that time was a feeble, weak-minded man, and had no children. He was willing to do as Lewis XIV. wanted; and when he died he left all his great kingdom to Lewis' grandson, because he was a near relation of his. Lewis XIV. had promised all the princes who belonged to the Grand Alliance that he would only let his grandson have a part of the lands belonging to the King of Spain; but, in spite of his promise, he took them all. William wished at once to make war upon him; but at first Parliament would not hear of war. Just then James died, and Lewis XIV. said that his son James Edward, who is always called the Pretender, was King of England. This made the English very angry with Lewis XIV., for they thought that no foreigner had a right to say who should be their king. Their anger with Lewis XIV. made them much more friendly to William, and

William thought he might prepare to make war upon Lewis XIV.

**William dies, 1702.**—William did not live to begin the war himself. He was riding one day in the park at Hampton Court, when his horse stumbled over a molehill, and he fell off and broke his collar-bone. It was a slight accident; but William's health was so bad that he had not the strength to get over it. He was sorry to die, for he felt that he had not finished the work he wanted to do. Many crowded to his deathbed, and he spoke kind and cheerful words to all till his spirit passed away.

**Queen Anne comes to the throne, 1702.**—William and Mary had no children, so when William died Mary's sister Anne became queen. Anne was a good woman who wished to be a good queen; but she was dull and stupid, and like her father, James II., she was very obstinate. She had a great deal of trouble in her life, for one after another her children died, and not one lived to grow up. She bore her sorrows very patiently. She was a religious woman, and very fond of the English Church, and this made the people like and respect her. Anne's husband, Prince George of Denmark, was even duller than she was. He only cared about eating and drinking, and he never was of any importance in England.

**The Marlboroughs rule the Queen.**—Ever since Anne was a girl she had had one dear friend, Sarah Jennings, who was one of the ladies of her Court. Sarah was lively and clever, and could make

Anne do anything she wanted. Anne loved her so fondly that she wished to make it seem as though



JOHN CHURCHILL, DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH.

they were quite equal. She invented new names for them to call one another ; Sarah was Mrs. Freeman

and Anne was Mrs. Morley. Sarah had married a favourite courtier of James II., Lord Churchill, who was a very clever soldier. Churchill, though James II. had done everything for him, had helped William to become king. William saw what a clever man he was, and made him Earl of Marlborough; but he never trusted him, because he knew that though Marlborough pretended to be his friend, he used also to try and keep friends with James II. Towards the end of his life William had been more friendly to Marlborough, because he knew that he was the only man in England who could carry on the war against Lewis XIV. He hoped that after his death Marlborough would make Anne go on with the war.

As soon as Anne became queen she gave many offices to Marlborough and his wife. He was made Captain-General of all the troops, and Anne took for her ministers the men whom he recommended. Her Lord-Treasurer, Godolphin, was a great friend of Marlborough's, and these two men had everything their own way. They both liked the Tories better than the Whigs, and chose Tories as ministers.

The war against France begins, 1702.—Marlborough's great wish was to begin the war against Lewis XIV. as soon as possible, and to show the princes who belonged to the Grand Alliance that he was as eager for war as William had been. It was not easy to make several different princes work together; each wanted to get as much good as possible for his own country with as little cost and trouble as possible.



Marlborough was very clever in getting men to do as he wanted. He was a tall, handsome man, with very grand manners, and knew how to use very winning words. He was not afraid of trouble; and in those days, when there were no railways and only very bad roads, he would travel all over Europe to the courts of the different princes that he might himself persuade them to do as he wanted. England, Holland, Austria, and most of the German princes sent soldiers to the war; but England and Holland, which were the two richest countries, paid most of the cost. Marlborough was the general of the English and Dutch armies, and Prince Eugene, a very clever soldier and a great friend of Marlborough's, was the chief Austrian general. Besides there were several other German generals. The war went on at the same time on all the borders of France, and in Italy and Spain, so that Lewis XIV. had to send many armies against all his enemies. It lasted eleven years, and many great battles were fought, and Marlborough won much fame for England.

The battle of Blenheim is fought, 1704.—During the first two years of the war there was a good deal of fighting, but no great battle was fought. The Dutch were very timid and cautious, and would not let Marlborough do as he wished with their army. He took some towns from the French; but, on the whole, the war went well for Lewis XIV., and he felt so hopeful that he decided to send a great army to take Vienna, for he thought that then the Austrians



would have to make peace, and the war would be ended. Marlborough saw what the French meant to do. He was in the Netherlands with his army, but he set off to march all the way to Bavaria to stop the French army on the way to Vienna. There he joined his army to the Austrian army under Prince Eugene. The two generals had never met before, but they had always admired one another. Now they at once became warm friends, and were never jealous of each other's fame.

Marlborough and Eugene came upon the French army camped near the little village of Blenheim, on the Danube. A little river ran between the two armies, and the French had made their camp very strong by putting cannons on all the hills around. Marlborough was delighted to find himself near the French; he had no fear though the French army was larger than his. On the day of the battle he was up before sunrise getting everything ready; then he and Prince Eugene marched to attack the French from different points. Eugene led his soldiers over rough and hilly ground, and Marlborough had to lead his through the little river that ran between him and the French.

All the time whilst Marlborough's men were struggling through the river the French kept up a terrible fire upon them, but they went bravely on. When they had got to the other side, Marlborough led his cavalry to charge the enemy. Twice they charged, and as Marlborough's trumpets sounded for the third charge

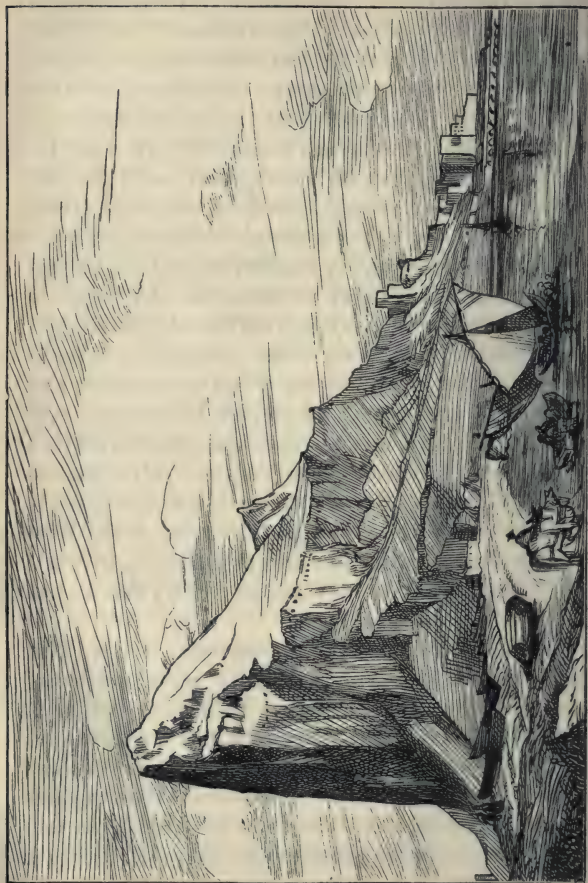
the French turned and fled. The English and their allies followed. Many French were killed and taken prisoners; others plunged into the Danube, and were drowned as they tried to escape. Three of the French generals were taken. Marlborough had been seventeen hours on horseback, but he did not think of resting until he had written a note to his wife, on a sheet of paper torn from his pocket-book, and had sent off a messenger to England with the joyful news.

Never before the battle of Blenheim had the armies of Lewis XIV. lost a great battle on land. It was a terrible blow to him, and great were the rejoicings in the rest of Europe. Marlborough was treated with much honour in England, and the nation gave him the royal park of Woodstock, near Oxford, as a reward for his services. A great palace, called Blenheim Palace, was begun to be built in the park for him.

**Marlborough wins more victories over the French.**—Every winter Marlborough used to go home to England, for the war stopped in winter, and the different armies rested in their camps. Then in the summer he went back to his army, and the fighting began again. He was always successful, whether he fought a battle or laid siege to a town. Two years after Blenheim he won a great battle at Ramillies, in the Netherlands, where after only three hours and a half's fighting the French turned and fled before him, and he took all their baggage and their cannon. In the following years he won several other great battles, and took many strong towns on the French border.

The capture of Gibraltar, 1704.—English soldiers also went to fight in Spain against Lewis XIV.'s grandson, Philip, whom he had made King of Spain. But they had no great general in Spain like Marlborough, and were not very successful, for the Spaniards liked Philip, and wished to have him for their king. The English fleet gained one little victory which no one thought much of then, but which has been very useful to us since. A few days before the battle of Blenheim, the English admiral, Sir George Rooke, took the rock of Gibraltar, in the south of Spain. Gibraltar is a very high cliff which goes straight down into the sea, and on it the Spaniards had made a fortress. But they did not guard it carefully, and Rooke easily took it, and the English have kept it ever since. It has been very useful to them, for the soldiers on the rock of Gibraltar can keep any ships they do not like from going through the narrow straits into the Mediterranean. Of course, as it belongs to the English, the English ships can always pass by safely, and this is very important for them, as they go this way to India.

Lady Marlborough quarrels with the Queen.—Marlborough found it much easier to manage his armies abroad than to manage people at home in England. The Whigs and Tories were always quarrelling, for each party wanted to have the chief share in the government. Marlborough thought their quarrels very silly, and he wanted to have some Whigs as well as some Tories in the government. But after a time it



ROCK OF GIBRALTAR.

seemed as if this sort of government would not do very well. The Duchess of Marlborough liked the Whigs best, and she was always teasing the Duke and Godolphin to make some of the chief Whigs ministers. But Anne liked the Tories best, and she did not want to have Whig ministers. The Duchess did all she could to try and make the Queen change her mind. She scolded her so much and was so violent that Anne grew to love her less and less. Anne found a new friend in one of the ladies of her Court, Mrs. Masham, who was very gentle and never contradicted her. The Duchess was furious when she found how friendly the Queen and Mrs. Masham were becoming, and she scolded the Queen more and more, and sent her long angry letters. Marlborough was very much troubled when he heard of these quarrels, and tried hard to make peace; but the Duchess would not learn to be more gentle, and the Queen was very obstinate. At last Marlborough and Godolphin too thought that the chief Whigs must be made ministers, because the Whigs were more eager to go on with the war than the Tories. They persuaded Anne to do as they wanted, and the Tory ministers were sent away and Whig ministers were chosen instead.

England and Scotland become one kingdom, 1707.—Whilst all these quarrels between Whigs and Tories were going on, one good thing was done. Scotland and England were made one kingdom. Since James I. became King of England they had had the same king, but they had had different Parliaments.



William III. had wished to make the two kingdoms really one, but he had died before he could do it. Now, after much talk between some men of both lands who were chosen to settle the matter, it was decided that there was to be but one Parliament for Great Britain, as England and Scotland together were called. So after a time there was an end of all jealousy between Scots and English, and they came to look upon one another as being the same people and having the same interests.

The Whigs lose power, 1710.—Anne did not like her Whig ministers, and her quarrels with the Duchess of Marlborough made her like the Duke less and less. She began to trust very much in a man called Robert Harley. Harley had once served the Duke of Marlborough, but he now wanted to have the chief power for himself. He was a Tory, and that made Anne like him; and he was a relation of Mrs. Masham's, and Mrs. Masham and he used to have secret talks with the Queen how they might turn the Whigs out of power. The Whigs were very eager about going on with the war. Lewis XIV. had several times offered to make peace, but he was not willing to give the Grand Alliance all that Marlborough thought they ought to have, so Marlborough would not let peace be made. But the English people were growing tired of the war. At first they had been very proud of the splendid victories which Marlborough had won; but after a while they began to grumble at having to pay so much money for the war.



When the Queen saw that the people were growing tired of the Whigs and of the war, she dared to send away her Whig ministers, and made Harley her chief minister. About the same time a new Parliament had to be chosen, and most of the members were Tories, and were pleased to have Harley as Prime Minister. He was made Earl of Oxford, and for a time Anne did just as he pleased.

Peace is signed at Utrecht, 1713.—After his friends the Whigs lost their power Marlborough was still general for a time, but the Queen did not ask his advice as she had done before. The Tory ministers wanted to make peace, and they did all they could to make people disgusted with the war. There were a great many very clever writers in England at that time. Oxford used to make friends with these writers and flatter them, and get them to write papers praising the things which he did and blaming his enemies. The Whigs tried to get writers to write for them too, but they could not get such clever writers as the Tories. Every one in London read these papers, and they made the quarrels between Whigs and Tories more bitter than ever.

Lewis XIV. wished for peace very much. The long war had done a great deal of harm to France. All the money to pay for it had to be got from the people somehow, and though Lewis XIV. had the most splendid Court in Europe, his people grew poor and wretched. Even the soldiers in the army could not get bread enough. Lewis XIV. saw that Oxford wished for

peace too, and with his help he hoped to end the war. First of all Oxford persuaded the Queen to tell Marlborough that he must be no longer general, and then there was a meeting at Utrecht to settle peace between the Dutch and the French and the English. It was a very disgraceful peace, for in spite of all Marlborough's victories, the English got no good from the war. Lewis XIV.'s grandson was left King of Spain; and on the whole, things stayed very much as they were before the war. But the war made this difference, that it showed the rest of Europe what the English could do if they tried, and stopped Lewis XIV. from settling the affairs of Europe as he liked.

Marlborough was very sad to see such a peace made after all the victories he had won. He went away from England with his wife, as he did not care to live there in disgrace after he had been the chief man in the land. He was one of the greatest generals there has been in England, and for some years he was the greatest man not only in England, but in all Europe, and it seemed as if he could settle things as he would.

Queen Anne dies, 1714.—Anne was in bad health, and it seemed as if she could not live long. People were very anxious about what should happen after her death. Many of the Tories wished to have James II.'s son, the Pretender, for their king. But it had been settled in William's reign that if Anne had no children the English crown was to go to the Princes of the house of Hanover. James I.'s daughter had married a German prince, and her grandson, the Elec-

tor George of Hanover, was the nearest Protestant relation that Anne had. The Whigs wished the Elector to be king, as had been settled in William's time, but they were afraid lest Anne herself should favour the cause of her brother, the Pretender. Some even of Anne's ministers were friends of the Pretender's. But just before she died she quarrelled with Oxford, and made the Earl of Shrewsbury, who was a Whig, treasurer in his stead. Three days afterwards she died, and Shrewsbury at once had the Elector proclaimed king as George I. The people were very glad that the uncertainty was over, and no one dared to speak in favour of the Pretender.

You will see from Anne's reign what a difference the Revolution had made in England. Before the Revolution the struggle was who should have the chief power, the King or the Parliament. In Anne's reign it was looked upon as quite settled that Parliament should have the chief power. The struggle now was between Whigs and Tories. The Queen could not keep Tory ministers when the Parliament wished for Whig ministers, and she could not send away her Whig ministers till she was sure that Parliament would be satisfied with Tory ministers. The Tories were the friends of the Stuarts and of the old state of things; the Whigs were the friends of Parliament and did not fear changes, and they were more friendly than the Tories to the Dissenters

George I. becomes king, 1714.—George I. had given orders for some of the Whig lords to govern

the kingdom in his name till he came to England. He was not in a hurry to come. He was very happy in Hanover, where he ruled his people well, and was much beloved by them. After seven weeks he and his son reached England. He was fifty-four years old, a small, shy, awkward man, and could not speak English, so he was not the kind of king to win the love of the English people. He brought many of his Hanoverian favourites with him, who hoped to grow rich in England, and this helped to make the English dislike the King, for they did not like to see the Court crowded with greedy foreigners. George I. wished to rule the country well, but he could never learn to understand the English Government, so he left his ministers to do very much as they liked. When he came to England he sent away all the Tory ministers, and chose all his ministers from the Whigs, and for a long while the chief power in England was in the hand of the Whigs.

**The Jacobites try to make the Pretender king, 1715.**—England was in a very troubled state, for many people did not wish to have George I. for their king, and it seemed likely that war would break out in the land. The Whigs were very anxious to keep George I. safe on the throne, not because they liked him, but because they knew that he must govern in such a way as to please Parliament, since he was only King by the will of Parliament. Some of the chief Tories fled away to the Pretender, and they began to plan to bring him to England with an army. But most of the things they tried to do failed. In

Scotland the Earl of Mar got many of the Highlanders together to fight for the Pretender, and some Jacobite gentlemen in the north of England gathered an army. If these armies had succeeded at all, many other Tories would have been willing to help the Pretender. But the Whigs were active in doing all they could to put down the rising. The Jacobite army in England was beaten and scattered, and many of the chief Jacobites were taken prisoners. The Pretender himself had come from France and joined the Earl of Mar; but when he saw that things were going against him, he was too selfish and too fond of pleasure to run into danger and fled away to France with Mar, leaving those who were fighting for him to their fate.

After the rising was put down, the country was still in a very troubled state. It was time for a new Parliament to be chosen, but the ministers feared that elections would disturb the country more. So Parliament passed a bill to allow the King to keep the same Parliament sitting for seven years instead of three, and this is still the law.

Robert Walpole becomes Chief Minister, 1721.—George's ministers were always Whigs, but the Whigs quarrelled amongst themselves for the chief power. One of his first ministers, Lord Stanhope, was very clever in the way in which he managed the relations of England with the other princes in Europe. There were a great many troubles in Europe at that time, and people were always expecting another great



war to break out. Stanhope watched carefully lest anything should be done that might harm England, and made foreign princes think very much of the power of England. After Stanhope's death Sir Robert Walpole became chief minister. He was a very sensible man, and was particularly clever in money matters. He spent very little money, and always knew how to get money when it was wanted, so that George I. said that "Walpole could make gold from nothing." Walpole was chief minister for twenty years, and he was a useful minister for England, for he saw that what the land most needed was peace. During all that time he kept England from taking part in any foreign wars, so that there was time for things to get settled at home. The power of Parliament grew, and the Hanoverian kings became safe on the throne.

Walpole was a fat awkward man, with a loud laugh, and he did not know how to speak well in Parliament; but he knew how to manage men, and he knew how to get the King to do what he wanted. He was very careful not to displease the people, for he knew that his government could not be strong if the people disliked him. He used to get the members of Parliament to do as he liked by bribing them with large sums of money. This was very bad, but in those days no one thought it as bad as they would think it now. Walpole would joke about it, and said that every man had his price; and he laughed at the young men who when they first came into Parliament did not like to take bribes, and



called them saints. Walpole did not wish any one but himself to have much power. He would not have clever ministers to work with him, lest they should become too important. So for twenty years he ruled the country, and kept things quiet, and gave England rest, which was what was most needed.

**George II. becomes king, 1727.**—George I. died very suddenly ; he was on his way to pay a visit to Hanover when he was seized with a fit and died in his carriage. His death did not make much difference to England, his son became king in his stead as George II. He was, like his father, more German than English, and cared much more about Hanover than about England. He had never liked Walpole, and men thought that now Walpole's power would be gone and there would be new ministers. But Walpole was clever enough to gain the King's friendship, and above all, the Queen trusted in him. This Queen Caroline was clever and sensible, and loved her husband dearly, and he loved and trusted her. She persuaded him that Walpole was the best man to rule England, and so he left everything to Walpole as his father had done.

**Walpole loses his power, 1742.**—Walpole had a great many enemies in England, for there were other clever men in Parliament who wanted to have some share in the government too, and they grew more and more angry with Walpole, and went against him in every way. Besides, men began to grow tired of peace. Walpole had done all he could to keep England from joining in any of the disputes that were going on

between the other countries in Europe. Walpole's enemies said that this made other countries think very little of England. George II., too, who had fought in the wars of the great Duke of Marlborough, thought himself a good general, and wanted to distinguish himself.

The country which the English hated most just then was Spain, because the Spaniards interfered with the English trade with America. The English merchants and sailors said that the Spaniards did many unfair and wicked things. A captain called Jenkins said that the Spaniards had torn off his ear and bidden him take it to his king. He used to carry about his ear wrapped in cotton wool and show it to people. Men grew eager for war. The Queen was dead, so Walpole had lost his best friend; and when the King, too, insisted upon fighting, he had to give way and declare war against Spain. The people were so delighted that the bells rang out a merry peal at the news. "They may ring the bells now," said Walpole as he heard them; "they will be wringing their hands before long."

The war went badly for the English at first, and Walpole got blamed for everything that went wrong. A new Parliament had to be elected, and though Walpole tried hard to get members chosen who would be friendly to him, he had more enemies than friends in the new Parliament. So he could not be Prime Minister any longer, and he gave up his office.

The people hoped that everything would go well now, and that the ministers would rule honestly without

bribes. But there was not much change. The new ministers did much the same things as Walpole had done, and each tried first of all to grow rich and get power for himself.

## CHAPTER XXII.

### *ENGLAND AND HER COLONIES.*

George II. wins the battle of Dettingen, 1743.—After Walpole's fall there was no more peace for England. War was soon declared against France, because George II. wished to help the young Queen of Austria, Maria Theresa, whom the French had attacked. George II. commanded the English army himself, and led it against the French, who had marched into Germany. The English army got into a very dangerous position, and could not get out of it except by attacking the French, who were in a strong camp near Dettingen. George II. boldly led his men against the enemy. His horse ran away with him and very nearly carried him into the midst of the enemy. But it was stopped in time, and the King got off and put himself at the head of the foot soldiers, saying, "Now, I know I shall not run away." In broken English he called out to his men to follow him; and they fought bravely that day, and drove the French from the field. This is the last time that an English king has himself led his army to battle.

The young Pretender comes to Scotland, 1745, 1746.—Walpole had always said that if Eng-

land went to war with France, the French would stir up the Jacobites in England to make another rising, and things turned out as he had said. The Pretender James was dead, but he had left a son, Charles Edward, who was called the young Pretender, a handsome young prince, with pleasant, amiable manners. When the war between France and England began, the French got ready a fleet and an army to go to England and help the Jacobites.

When the fleet had set sail a great storm arose and scattered the ships, and did them so much harm that the expedition had to be given up. The young Pretender was very much disappointed, and after this the French were too busy with the other war to help him. So the next year he made up his mind to go alone to Scotland. He landed with only seven companions. At first no one seemed willing to help him, but after a while some of the Highland tribes began to gather round him. At last he was able to march to Edinburgh, and entered the town peacefully. There was only a small army in Scotland under an English general, Cope. Charles Edward marched out from Edinburgh to meet him. His Highlanders rushed upon their enemy with such violence that the English soldiers fled in terror. It is said that the battle was decided in six minutes.

Charles Edward marches into England, 1745.—This victory made Charles Edward very bold, and he set out to lead his Highlanders into England. He hoped that many of the English would join him

when they saw him at the head of an army. The Highlanders followed him gladly, for he had known how to gain their love. He wore their dress and marched at their head, showing that he was as strong as the best of them. He would not use his carriage, but made an old gentleman ride in it, and in every possible way he cared for the comfort of those who were with him. He got as far as Derby, and the road to London seemed open to him. People in London were very frightened. George II. himself was not afraid, and when people told him their fear, he said, "Pooh! don't talk to me that stuff."

Charles Edward did not get farther than Derby. All this time none of the English had joined him. The people watched him and his army as if they were a show. They did not do anything to harm them, but they did not help them. The gentlemen who were with Charles Edward told him that it would not be wise to go on, and advised him to go back to Scotland, where he had more friends. Charles Edward was very disappointed, but he did as they advised. He got back to Scotland safely, and there some more men joined him, and his Highlanders again drove an English army to flight before them. Then George II.'s second son, the Duke of Cumberland, came to command the English army in Scotland. He went after Charles Edward's army and met it at Culloden Field, near Inverness. The Highlanders as usual rushed madly upon the English, but this time the English stood firm, and after a while the Highlanders had to fly. They were all



scattered, and Cumberland punished those he could get hold of so severely that he got the name of the "Butcher."

Charles Edward goes back to France, 1746.—Charles Edward had to hide amongst the mountains. A large sum of money was offered for his head, but though he hid with the poorest of the Highlanders, none were so mean as to give him up. At one time he was nearly caught, for the place where he had hidden in the mountains was surrounded by a great many English soldiers. He did not know how to get out, but Flora Macdonald, a brave young Highland lady, helped him. She made him dress himself as her maid-servant, and with much difficulty went with him safely through the English troops. For five months he wandered about always in fear of his life, and at last he succeeded in getting away safely to France.

William Pitt becomes the chief man in England.—Most of the chief men in those days thought more of their own interests than of the good of their country. But there was one man in Parliament who had always spoken out boldly against the wrong things done by the government, and who had always shown himself pure and honest. This was William Pitt. He belonged to no noble family, but his upright conduct and his efforts to make things better made the people love and respect him. In Parliament he spoke such glowing words that men were forced to listen to him. George II. at first disliked him very much, because he was always saying that the ministers should care more

for the interests of England than for those of Hanover. This angered George II., who was much more German than English. For some time he would not have Pitt as a minister. But the people showed more and more that Pitt was the one man they trusted, and George II. had to give way.

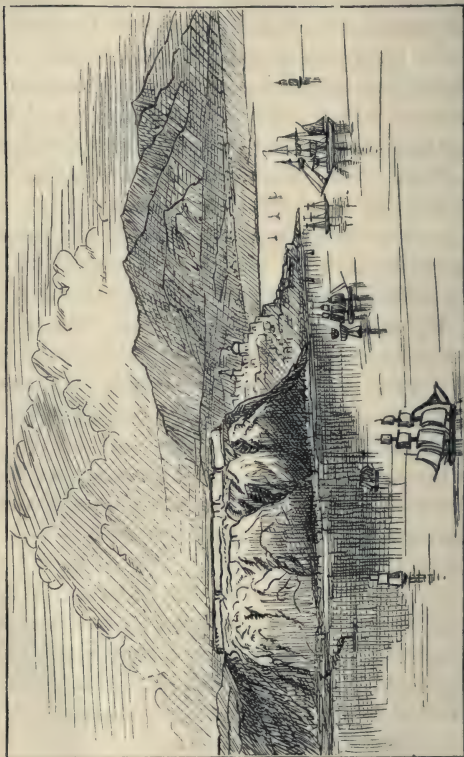
**The English fight the French in America, 1755-1760.**—When Pitt first came into power things were going very badly for England. There was war with France, and the English troops were in a bad state, with bad generals, and gained no victories. Besides the war in Europe there was war in America. The English colonies there had grown very large, but there were also many French colonies, and the French wished to be the chief people in the new country. The English saw that unless they could put an end to the French power in America their own colonies would suffer. So war had broken out in America to see which should be the masters, the French or the English colonists. The same thing happened in India, where there were also both French and English colonists.

**The English take Quebec, 1759.**—Pitt found all this fighting going on without any good coming to the English. He set to work at once to get better generals and better troops, and make men really work hard for success. He was very clever in finding out good generals. He chose one young man, James Wolfe, to be second in command in America, because he saw how clever and honest and brave he was. Quebec

was one of the chief cities in Canada, and the French general, Montcalm, was quartered there with his army. Pitt saw that if the English could get Quebec, they would win the whole of Canada, and he gave Wolfe the difficult task of taking the town. Montcalm lay with his army before Quebec in such a way that Wolfe could not get at him, and Montcalm would not come out to fight. Then Wolfe did a very daring deed. One dark night he carried his army in a few boats across the river on which Quebec stood, and led them up some rocky heights behind the town, which were so steep that it was thought no army could get up them. The paths were so difficult that often only one man could get up at a time. The next morning Montcalm was surprised to see the English army on the heights above the town. He thought, however, that he would easily drive them back, and led his men against them. The English stood quiet till the French had come near, and then they sent a deadly volley of balls amongst them. The next moment Wolfe charged them at the head of his men. But as he led them three balls struck him, and he had to be carried to the rear. As he lay dying the officer who held him in his arms cried, "They run, I protest they run!" Wolfe roused himself to ask who it was that ran. When he was told that it was the French, he murmured, "Then I die happy," and fell back dead.

Four days after the English entered Quebec, and soon after the war in America came to an end, and the French lost all their power there.

England was successful everywhere. The same year



CITADEL AND TOWN OF QUEBEC, FROM THE OPPOSITE SIDE OF THE ST. LAWRENCE RIVER.

that Quebec was taken they won many victories in Europe, both on land and sea. A writer at the time

said, "We are forced to ask every morning what victory there is for fear of missing one." England had never been so great and important before. Men felt that this was Pitt's doing, and he became the idol of the country. Every one was eager to praise him and do him honour.

Clive founds the English Empire in India, 1751-1761.—The wars in which England took part at this time had very important effects. One great cause of the wealth and greatness of England now is her colonies. No other country has so many rich and fertile colonies, and it now seems that of all the peoples in Europe none are so able as the English to make their home in strange lands, and carry their trade and their industries all over the world. But we have seen that till the reign of George II. it was not settled whether the French or the English should have the chief power in America. At that time the French, too, hoped to found great colonies, and the English had to fight with the French in India as they had fought in America.

Queen Elizabeth had given a number of merchants, who were called the East India Company, permission to trade with India. Since then no English merchants except those belonging to the Company might trade with India. The Company had not cared to get lands in India. All they had cared for was trade. To protect their trade they built some forts on land given them by the Indian Emperor, and these forts became afterwards the cities of Madras, Bombay, and



Calcutta. As the Company brought wealth to India, the Emperor was glad to show it favour. The French also traded with India, and had some forts there, the chief of which was Pondicherry. The Indian Emperors had come to be very feeble men, and the princes under them, who were called Nabobs, began to do as they liked in the provinces over which they ruled, and did not care what the Emperor said.

A clever Frenchman called Dupleix was governor of Pondicherry. He wanted the French to be the chief traders in India, and he thought that if he could get some of the Nabobs to help him, he might make himself ruler over part of India. The English Company saw that they must stop his doings, or else they would be driven out of India altogether. They sent some of their soldiers to help a Nabob whom Dupleix had driven out of his chief city, Arcot. But at first the English were beaten, and the Company was in despair. Amongst their clerks was a young man called Robert Clive. His father had sent him to India because he was so wild and idle at home that nothing could be done with him. When the fighting began in India, Clive at once became a soldier, for he was more fitted to fight than to do a clerk's work. He offered to lead a small number of soldiers into Arcot. In stormy weather, through thunder and lightning, he made his way to Arcot, and took it by surprise. But soon a great army of natives and French gathered round to take the city from him. The siege lasted fifty days. Clive made his soldiers brave like himself,



so that they cheerfully bore danger and hunger, and at last they drove back the enemy. After this Clive did many other daring deeds, till the natives began to think more of the English than of the French.

**Surajah Dowlah takes Calcutta, 1756.**—Bengal was the richest province in India. It was ruled over by a weak and foolish Nabob, Surajah Dowlah, who loved to do cruel deeds and see the suffering of others. He hated the English traders, and went against their city Calcutta, and took it. The chief English there, 146 in number, of whom one was a lady, were taken prisoners. Surajah Dowlah said that the next morning he would settle what should be done with them, and that meanwhile his officers were to keep them safe. The officers ordered the English to march into a prison called the Black Hole, which was a terrible place, only twenty feet square, with narrow slits for windows. At first the prisoners thought they were joking, but they soon found that it was terrible earnest. It was the hottest time of the year, and that stifling hole was not a fit place for one man to pass the night in ; but there these poor men were put. In vain they cried for mercy ; they tried to burst the door ; they offered bribes to the soldiers. The cruel men only mocked their sufferings, and laughed at their cries of agony. The next morning only twenty-three were left alive, the rest had been stifled or crushed to death.

**Clive wins the battle of Plassy, 1757.**—When the English in the other parts of India heard of

this terrible deed they sent Clive to punish Surajah Dowlah. Clive had only a small army, and Surajah Dowlah ruled over countless hosts ; but Clive took back Calcutta, and forced the Nabob to make peace. Then Clive determined to set up in Surajah Dowlah's place another Nabob, who would be the friend of the English. With only 3000 men he defeated Surajah Dowlah, who had an army of 55,000, at the great battle of Plassy. Then he set up a new Nabob, who in return gave many lands and much riches to Clive and the Company, and was really the servant of the English.

The French did not like to see the English grow so strong in India, and they sent a clever general to make war on them. But the English took Pondicherry, and the power of the French in India came to an end.

**George III. becomes king, 1760.**—George II. died suddenly when Pitt had raised England to be the first country in Europe. His eldest son was dead, and his grandson, a young man of twenty-two, succeeded him as George III.

George III. had been brought up very quietly. His mother, the Princess of Wales, had not got on at all well with George II. So she did not let her children go to Court, but kept them quite under her own care. George III. was a real Englishman born and brought up in England. The last two kings had both been Germans; they had loved Hanover better than England, and had never even learned to speak English properly. So it had come about that they had let the great Whig lords manage things in England for them. The Whig

lords, by bribes and other ways, had got men chosen for Parliament who were willing to do as they liked. They had seemed to rule as Parliament wished, but really they had chosen Parliament themselves.

When George III. became king there was a change in this state of things. George III. was a self-willed and rather stupid man. His mother had always taught him that when he became king he must do as he willed, and not let the Whigs have everything their own way. So George III. was not prepared to submit to the Whigs as his grandfather had done. Besides this the Tories were willing to be his friends. For a long time the Tories had always hoped to get back a Stuart king, and they had no power under the two last kings. Now they saw that it was hopeless to think of the Stuarts any more, and as they had a really English king, they were willing to stand by him, and help him against the Whig lords.

George III. showed at once that he meant to be his own master. He made the Earl of Bute, who was his mother's chief adviser, one of his ministers. When Pitt found that the King listened more to Bute than he did to him he gave up his office. Then the King tried a number of other ministers, but none of them did well, and after some years he asked Pitt to be Prime Minister again. But Pitt did not do such great things then as he had done before. He was made Earl of Chatham, and the people, who had loved him so much before, were disappointed that he let himself be made an earl. His health, which had always been

bad, grew much worse, and he gave up office again. After this the King managed for a while to get ministers who would do as he wanted, and so he really ruled the country himself.

**War between England and America, 1775-1778.**—George III. did not rule wisely, and his mistakes brought great trouble upon England. The English colonies in America were displeased because the English Government wished to fix how much they should pay for the expenses of the war against the French, and said that it had a right to make the colonies pay taxes. The Americans said that as they sent no members to the English Parliament, the English Parliament had no right to fix their taxes, but that they ought to do it themselves. Till now the American colonies had been true to their mother country, and had been proud to belong to her, but they soon began to grow discontented. George III. did not try to smooth over the quarrel. His idea was that the Americans must be taught to obey. Chatham and many of the Whigs said that it was not right to make the Americans pay taxes, but George III. would have his own way. The quarrel went on till at last the different American states agreed to fight for their liberties. They had no trained soldiers, but they were brave, and ready to die rather than give way, and they had a clever general, George Washington, who at once set to work to train soldiers.

The fighting began at Bunker's Hill, near Boston. The American soldiers were encamped on the hill, and

the English tried to drive them from it. After some very hard fighting the English at last succeeded ; but they lost so many men that their victory did not do them much good. As the war went on the Americans became better soldiers, and showed that they were determined to fight on till their freedom was secured. Many of the English wished to make peace. Chatham spoke in favour of peace. Edmund Burke, an Irishman, who was a member of Parliament, made some of the wisest and best speeches that have ever been made in favour of peace with the Americans. But George III. would not give way. He looked upon the Americans as naughty children who must be punished and made to obey.

The Earl of Chatham dies, 1778.—When France saw how successful the Americans were she offered to help them, and to treat them as a nation, and not as a colony under the rule of the English king. Then it seemed more hopeless than ever for the English to go on fighting against America. But Chatham, who before had wished for peace, could not bear to think of giving way to France. He remembered the days when he had helped England to triumph over all her enemies, and had made her the first nation in Europe, and he could not bear to see her humbled at the feet of her enemies. Chatham was old, and ill with gout, from which he had always suffered. His doctors said that he must not go to the House, but he insisted on being taken there to speak against the peace. The Lords made way for him respectfully as



he entered the House leaning on his crutch, dressed in a rich velvet coat, his legs swathed in flannel. When he rose to speak his voice was so weak that he could scarcely be heard, but he was listened to in perfect silence. He rose to speak a second time, but before he had said a word he pressed his hand on his breast and fell down in a fit. He was carried out of the House, and died a few weeks afterwards.

**War is declared against France, 1778.**—George III. was as much against peace as Chatham. War was declared against France and Spain, and Holland joined France. England had no one to help her, and had nearly all Europe against her. French and Spanish fleets sailed the seas, and England was in sore straits. The Spaniards were especially eager to get Gibraltar. But the English soldiers on the rock gallantly defended it against the Spanish attacks for a whole year. The Spaniards made great rafts to hold their cannon, and from them sent a terrible fire upon the English. But the English answered with a stream of red-hot shot, which at last set the rafts on fire, so that they were destroyed, and the siege was over. The English, too, gained a great victory at sea over the French fleet, and so showed what they could do even against so many enemies.

**Peace is made with America, 1782.**—But in America the war still went against the English. At last the English ministers saw that peace must be made, and the Americans were glad to make peace if the English would treat them as a free country. So peace was



signed at Paris between England and all her enemies. After this the English colonies in America formed a separate nation called the United States, and governed themselves as a republic. They have a Parliament elected out of the separate states, but they have no House of Lords, and both their Chambers are chosen by the people, but in different ways. At the head of the nation is a President elected every four years. The colony of Canada in the northern part of America remained true to England, and still belongs to her.

**The English power grows in India, 1765-1785.**—We must now turn to India, and see how things went after Clive made the English so powerful. As soon as Clive himself left India everything went wrong. The English Company quarrelled with the native princes, and did many unwise and unjust acts, till there was such disorder in the country that Clive had to be asked to go there again to put things straight. The Indian princes were terrified when they heard that he was in India again. The mere sound of his name was enough to make them ask for peace. In return for peace Clive got from one of the great Indian princes the chief province in India, Bengal, which was to be governed by an Indian prince chosen by the Company.

**Warren Hastings becomes Governor-General of India, 1773.**—After Clive had done much to make things better in India his health obliged him to come back to England. As soon as he had gone new troubles came upon India. There were more quarrels with the Indian princes, and besides there was

a terrible famine in Bengal, which caused more than half the people to die. All this made the Government in England think that the Company was hardly fit to manage the affairs of India. So Parliament made some changes in the Company's government, and a man called Warren Hastings was made Governor-General of India. Whilst Parliament was settling these changes many things were said finding fault with what Clive had done in India. He was worn out and ill at the time, and this faultfinding grieved him so deeply that he killed himself at the age of forty-nine.

Warren Hastings had a difficult work to do. Clive had conquered the French settlers and the Indian princes in battle; Hastings had to put in order the government of the vast lands over which the Company ruled. He had to make the English traders and settlers cease from robbing and ill-treating the natives, and he had to make the different Indian peoples live at peace with one another. Hastings really wished to do what was good for India as well as what was good for England. He was a wise and a great man, and he knew how to make men obey him. He made India more peaceful than it had been for many years, so that all the natives feared him, and many loved him, for he showed them that he wished them to be happy and well governed, and that he did not only care to help the English to grow rich.

Hastings is impeached, 1787.—But though Hastings was a great man, he did many things which in England were thought wrong and unjust, and he

had many enemies. When he came back to England he was impeached, that is, brought to trial by the House of Commons at the bar of the House of Lords for his conduct in India.

Westminster Hall was crowded with all the chief men in England on the day on which Hastings' trial began. Burke spoke for four days, with glowing words accusing him of robberies, and cruelties, and many unjust deeds. Many spoke against him; but the trial lasted on for seven years, so that men had time to see what good Hastings really had done for India, and he was acquitted in the end.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### *ENGLAND AND NAPOLEON.*

William Pitt becomes Prime Minister, 1783.—After the war in America had gone so badly for the English under ministers who were willing to do just as the King wanted, George III. had to choose new ministers. This he found very difficult, for he hated the Whigs, and yet amongst his own friends there were none able to please the country and Parliament. After trying several ministers, the King in despair asked young William Pitt to become Prime Minister. William Pitt was the second son of the Earl of Chatham. He had been his father's favourite son, and had shown signs of greatness even as a child. In his studies at Cambridge he had won great honours, and when he was only twenty-one he became a member of the House of Commons. The very first time he spoke in the House every one heard him with admiration, and saw in him a worthy son of his great father. Burke said, "He is not a chip of the old block, he is the old block itself." Pitt was only twenty-four when George III. made him Prime Minister. He had very few friends in the House of Commons, and at first it

seemed as if he could not remain Prime Minister, for most of the members voted against everything which he proposed. But he waited a while, and then he asked George III. to dissolve Parliament. The country had learned to trust him, and most of the members who were sent to the new Parliament were willing to do as he wanted.

At last George III. had a minister with whom he could agree, and whom the country would trust. The Whigs quite lost their power, and for eighteen years Pitt was Prime Minister. The chief men who went against him were Burke, the Irishman who spoke so splendidly, and Fox, a warm-hearted man, eager for the good of his fellow-creatures, who was also a very clever speaker.

Pitt set to work at once to bring order into the affairs of England. He was very clever at managing money matters, and did all he could to help trade and manufacture. People had at first thought that England would suffer very much from the loss of America. Instead of that the country had been richer than ever since the war, for English manufactures began to grow very important.

The steam-engine is invented, 1774.—One great reason of the growth of manufactures was that a young Scot, James Watt, invented the steam-engine, by which all kinds of machines could be worked. Before this manufactories could only be built along the banks of streams, for their machines had to be worked by water. Now that the machines could be

worked by steam, new manufactories sprang up everywhere, and many more goods could be made. In earlier times the chief English manufacture had been woollen cloth. The English had learned weaving from the Flemish settlers, and the chief manufacturing towns had been in the east of England. Now large quantities of cotton were brought from America to Liverpool, and were made into cotton cloth, and stamped and dyed in the busy towns that clustered round Manchester. The steam-engines made the manufacture of cotton stuffs both cheaper and easier. At first the work-people did not understand the change; they thought that when steam-engines were used there would be fewer workmen needed, and wages would become less. In many places the workmen burned and destroyed the machines, and it took some time before they understood how much good the new inventions did both to the workmen and the masters.

**The working men are discontented.**—It had been found out, too, that iron could be worked with coal, and not only with charcoal, as had once been thought. England is very rich both in coal and iron mines, and great numbers of men found work in the mines and in smelting the iron. So it came about that the greater number of men in England were no longer busied with tilling the land, but worked in the manufactories and in the mines. As there was plenty of work to be got, men were able to marry early and find work for their families; so the population began to grow very quickly, and soon it appeared that



there could not be enough corn grown in England for the wants of the people. Flour was very dear, and there was much discontent among the people, who were learning to think for themselves, and who did not see why their masters should grow rich while they stayed poor and miserable.

**The French Revolution disturbs England, 1789.**—At this time there were great troubles in France, for the people grew discontented with the King and the nobles, and rose against them to make them govern better. The people were so strong that they were able to do as they liked, and the King was kept a prisoner by them.

Many of the other princes in Europe thought that they ought to go and help the French king against his people. But Pitt loved peace above all things, and he thought that no good could come to England from war, so he was willing to let the French people do as they liked so long as they did not interfere with England. Fox cared much more for the French people than for their king, and wished their Revolution to succeed, and praised what they had done. But Burke thought that the French Revolution would tempt other peoples to rise against their rulers, and would bring great danger to Europe. He wrote a book in which he told men the danger that he thought would come from the French Revolution. His book was read by every one, and began to make people very eager for war with the French.

**War begins between France and England, 1793.**—The French people had first begun to

do things quietly, but after a while they grew more violent. Numbers of the rich and of the nobles were put to death, many cruel and violent deeds were done, and at last the King himself was put to death. This filled all Europe with horror, for the King was really a good man who had tried to do well, but had not been wise enough for those troubled times.

Pitt still wished to keep the peace, but most of his own friends thought that war on France ought to be made. The French, too, wished for war with the English, and they took the first step and declared war. So England joined other nations in Europe in making war upon France.

When the French people saw that all Europe was against them, they made up their minds to struggle to the last for their liberty. Though they had so many enemies, they managed to resist them all. The English had little success in the war, and after three years Pitt tried to make peace. But the French were very proud and triumphant, and refused to make peace. This made the English people eager to help Pitt in every way to carry on the war. They trusted in Pitt as the one man who could bring them safely through their dangers.

Nelson wins the battle of the Nile, 1798. —In the French army a great general had arisen called Napoleon Buonaparte. He was not really a Frenchman, but a native of Corsica. He soon became, however, the chief man in France, for the army adored him, because they were always victorious when he led

them. Instead of being busy with settling their own affairs at home, the French, led by Napoleon, made war on other lands, for Napoleon's heart was set on glory and conquest. He made up his mind even to make war on Egypt, and ships were got ready at Toulon to carry a French army to Egypt. The English



VICE-ADMIRAL HORATIO, LORD NELSON.

—*From a Painting by Abbott.*

knew that the expedition was getting ready, but they did not know where it was going to, and Nelson, a brave and clever naval officer, was sent with a fleet to watch and follow it. Nelson had lost his right arm and his right eye in battle some time before, and had been afraid that he would never again be of any use to

his country. But he was so full of spirit that after a little rest he was eager to go forth and fight again, and men believed that he was able to do great things.

When he got to Toulon Napoleon had already started. For more than two months Nelson followed him about the Mediterranean without being able to find him. The French were anxious to keep out of the way of the English fleet, and they succeeded in landing in Egypt and winning a great battle before Nelson could hear anything of them. At last he felt sure from what he heard that they must be in Egypt, and he sailed for Alexandria. When he drew near the city he saw the French flag flying upon its walls. In his anxiety he had scarcely eaten or slept for a week ; then he ordered dinner to be served, and bade his men prepare for a battle. The French fleet was anchored in a bay a little way from the shore. Nelson saw that there would be just room enough for some of his ships to sail between the French and the shore. He did not waste a moment, and though it was late in the day, ordered his ships at once for the battle. At six o'clock the English began the attack, half the ships steering between the French and the shore. Nelson with the others anchored outside the French ships. Then a terrible fire began upon the French from both sides, and the people of the country crowded the shore to see the fearful sight. Darkness soon set in, but still the flashes of the guns lit up the scene from time to time. Nelson was wounded in his head, and the wound bled so much that men thought he was dying. He was carried below,

where the surgeons were attending the wounded. They hurried to help him, but Nelson said, "No, I will take my turn with these brave fellows!" He waited till his turn came, and then it was found that his wound was only slight. It was dressed, and he was carried to his cabin and left alone. Suddenly a cry was heard that the French flagship was on fire. Nelson groped his way on to the deck, and to their surprise his men heard his voice in the darkness bidding them get out the boats and go and help the French sailors in the burning ship. They saved about seventy of them. The battle went on till daybreak, but only four French ships managed to escape, nine were taken, and two were burned.

This great battle filled all Europe with joy and hope, for now the French fleet was destroyed and Napoleon and his army were shut up in Egypt.

**England makes peace with France, 1802.**  
—Pitt once more got all the chief princes of Europe to agree to make war on France. But they did not do much good, and after a while Napoleon came back alone to France from the East and persuaded his enemies one by one to make peace till England was left alone. About this time Pitt had a quarrel with the King, and resigned his post of Prime Minister. A new minister, Addington, was chosen, who tried to do well, but was not very wise. England had spent so much money on the war that the country was eager for it to come to an end, and the ministers were at last able to make peace.

Pitt brings about the Union between Ireland and England, 1800.—We must go back a little to see what was going on in Ireland whilst the whole of Europe was busy with the war with France. There had always been troubles in Ireland ever since it belonged to England, and the state of the people had become so miserable that they grew more and more discontented. Most of the Irish were Roman Catholics, but the only people who had anything to do with the government of the country were the English who had settled there, who belonged to the Church of England. There was a Parliament in Ireland, but the English settlers could get the people they liked sent to Parliament, and in every way the poor Irish were ill-treated. When they heard how the French had risen against their rulers, the Irish too thought that they would rise and get freedom for themselves. Bands of lawless Irish appeared in every part of the country, and did many cruel and fierce deeds. The English tried to put them down, and they too did many cruel things. At last soldiers were sent from England, and after a time order was brought back. But Pitt saw that there never could be peace in Ireland unless the way of governing it were changed. He got Parliament to pass an Act called the Act of Union, which settled that England and Ireland should be governed as one country. The Irish Parliament was done away with, and instead Irish members were sent to the English Parliament. Still the misery and discontent in Ireland has not come to an end, and now many of the Irish are eager to



do away with the Union and have home rule in Ireland.

Napoleon makes war on England again, 1803.—The peace with France did not last long. Napoleon would not be content till he had conquered all Europe. He wished to conquer England, and he began to get ready a number of flat-bottomed boats, in which his soldiers were to be carried across the Channel to invade England. The English felt that they must all unite to meet this great danger. But they knew that only one man could help them. Addington was no good in this hour of danger, and the King followed the wishes of the people by again making Pitt Prime Minister.

All England was full of excitement; the people believed that any moment the French might be upon them. Thousands of volunteers were raised. Little round towers, called martello towers, were built to defend the coast. Every one was busy in preparing to fight. Pitt encouraged the people in all they did, but his chief work was to take care that the navy was in a good condition, for he knew that it was the navy which could best defend England. He also set to work once more to get the other countries in Europe to join together to fight Napoleon.

Napoleon had now got himself named Emperor of the French, and he ruled France at his pleasure, and all men trembled before him. But he was obliged to give up invading England. He waited for his fleet to come to protect his army while it crossed the Channel.

But the fleet did not come in time, and, bitterly disappointed, Napoleon changed his plans, and went to fight against the Russians and Austrians, instead of invading England.

**Nelson wins the battle of Trafalgar, 1805.**  
—Nelson had been chasing the French fleet without ever being able to overtake it, and he went to take a little rest in his country house. Whilst he was there he heard that the French fleet had entered Cadiz. He at once offered to the Government to go and fight it. His offer was gladly accepted. When he reached Portsmouth to set sail he was received by joyful crowds who were almost ready to worship him. People even knelt as he passed along, and wept as they asked him to bless them.

When Nelson reached Cadiz he found that the French had sailed. He followed them and overtook them near the Straits of Gibraltar, off the Cape of Trafalgar. He carefully made his plans for the attack, and gave every one his orders. “No captain could do wrong,” he said, “who placed his ship close alongside that of an enemy.” The words with which he gave orders that the battle should begin were, “England expects that every man will do his duty.” They were answered by three cheers from every ship.

Nelson stood on the deck of his ship wearing on his coat four stars, the orders which had been given him, so that it was easy for the enemy to see who he was. His friends begged him to wear a plainer coat, but he would not change; he was careless about his own safety.



MAN-OF-WAR IN THE TIME OF NELSON, "THE VICTORY."

The English ships in full sail, with the wind in their favour, attacked the French. The battle lasted five hours and a half. Early in the fight Nelson was struck by a ball aimed at him by a French rifleman. "They have done for me at last," he said; "my backbone is shot through." He was carried below covering his face and his stars with his handkerchief, so that his crew might not see who had fallen. Whilst the fight raged he lingered in great agony; but his eye lighted up when the shouts of his sailors told him that some French ship had struck. He lived long enough to know that his ships had gained a great victory. The French fleet was almost entirely destroyed, and after this Napoleon had to give up all hopes of ever invading England. The English could hardly rejoice when they heard of this victory, so deep was their grief for Nelson. His body was brought home to England, and, followed by weeping crowds, was taken to be buried at St. Paul's.

**The death of Pitt, 1806.**—Pitt sorrowed deeply for the death of Nelson, though he rejoiced at the great victory he had won. Everywhere else Napoleon was victorious, and Pitt was full of sadness at the thought that his great enemy was triumphing. He was in bad health, and the disappointment of his hopes to crush Napoleon made him much worse. He went to rest in the country, but grew quickly worse, and sank at last into a speechless stupor. Once only as he lay dying his lips were seen to move, and those who bent over him caught the words, "My country!

how I leave my country!" He was only forty-seven when he died. All his life he had worked to serve his country, and had loved her with a passionate love. He had not tried to gather riches for himself, and had only sought power because it helped him to serve his country.

The slave trade is done away with, 1807. —After Pitt's death there seemed no man fitted to take his place. George III. took for his ministers the chief men of both parties, whether Whig or Tory. George III. had always hated Fox, and refused to make him a minister, but now he had to give way. Fox had always believed that the French were not so dangerous to England as men thought. He hoped to make peace with Napoleon, but his hopes were disappointed, and he died before the year was out, like Pitt, with a sad heart. But Fox had helped on one great work upon which for long the hearts of all noble-minded men had been set; this was the putting an end to the slave trade.

When America was first discovered, and men went to settle there, and dig the rich mines and till the fertile lands of the New World, they had great difficulty in getting labourers to work for them. Then they found out that the negroes who lived in Africa were strong, and able to work well in a hot country. So the horrid custom had begun of stealing the negroes from their homes and carrying them to work as slaves in America. As the English were more active traders than any other people, they had soon got to manage all



the slave trade. The traders made a great deal of money by selling the negroes whom they had stolen from Africa. But the poor negroes were treated worse than any brute beasts. They were torn away from their homes and their families, and packed closely together in the low dark cabins of the slave-ships. They were chained there all day, and fed on beans and water, and were only allowed to come up on deck for a few hours every day, when they were made to jump about for the sake of exercise, and those who would not jump were whipped till they did so. At the end of their horrible voyage they were sold, and had to toil all their lives for their masters without any hope of freedom.

Pitt wished much to put an end to the horrible slave trade, and one day when he was walking in his park at Hayes with his friend Wilberforce, as they stood looking at the view on a spot which is still remembered, he advised Wilberforce to bring a bill into Parliament to put an end to the slave trade. Wilberforce, who was an earnest and religious man, devoted his life to do all he could for the poor slaves. At first Parliament would not pass his bill, for many of the members had lands in America, and they did not care about the sufferings of the poor negroes so long as they could buy slaves easily to do their work.

Wilberforce went on with his efforts, Fox when he became minister did all he could to help him, and men began to understand better the cruelty of the slave trade. So a bill was passed just after Fox's death for-



bidding the trade in slaves. Twenty-six years afterwards another bill was passed which gave freedom to all the slaves in the English colonies. Wilberforce lived just long enough to see the work which he had begun at last finished, and to hear that the poor slaves whom he had pitied so deeply were free.

**The English make war in Spain, 1808-1814.**—After the death of Pitt the English ministers did not manage the war against Napoleon wisely. Napoleon led his armies all over Europe, and everywhere gained great victories. In many of the countries which he conquered he set up new kings. Every one trembled before him, and it seemed as if he might order things as he liked over the whole of Europe.

In Spain Napoleon set up one of his brothers as king, and he put one of his generals in Portugal to keep order. But the Spaniards and the Portuguese hated the French. In all parts of the country they rose against them, and fought to free their country from their enemies.

When the English heard that the Spaniards were struggling to be free, they at once made up their minds to help them. They gave them money and arms, and an English army was sent to Portugal. But at first very little was done. The Spanish soldiers were badly trained, and the Spaniards did not keep their promises to the English. Besides, the English Government sent too few soldiers to be able to do anything against the immense French armies in Spain.

But an English general was sent to Portugal who was determined to make the war succeed. This was Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterwards the Duke of Wellington. He was one of the greatest generals there has ever been. He had already fought with great success in India. Now he was to show what he could do in Europe when fighting against Napoleon and the great generals he had taught.

Wellington had much difficulty in getting the English Government to send him the money and the soldiers he needed. But he saw clearly what harm he could do Napoleon in Spain, and he was determined to succeed. A great many battles were fought in this war, which is called the Peninsular War, because Spain and Portugal form a great peninsula. Little by little Wellington drove the French out of Spain.

**The battle of Vittoria, 1813.**—The last battle in Spain was fought at Vittoria, at the foot of the Pyrenees. Napoleon's brother Joseph, whom he had made King of Spain, was there with a large army. He had with him many ladies and a great many carriages and waggons full of stores. When the French were attacked by Wellington they soon fled in a panic. Their flight was hindered by the numbers of carriages, and they turned to flee to the mountains through a marsh, which was soon choked with carriages that could get no farther. The wounded and the dying covered the ground; noble ladies cried aloud for help, and droves of sheep and oxen trampled beautiful dresses and jewels in the mud. The soldiers plundered

in all directions amongst the gold and silver, the pictures and plate, which covered the ground. It was some time before Wellington could get his excited soldiers into order again.

After a good deal of fighting in the Pyrenees, Wellington made his way into France. Great was the joy of the English army when they looked down from the slopes of the Pyrenees upon the fair lands of France. A last terrible battle was fought at Toulouse, and after it Wellington entered Toulouse in triumph. There he heard news which for a time brought the war to an end.

**Lewis XVIII. is made King of France, 1814.**—Whilst his generals had been fighting Wellington in Spain, Napoleon had led a mighty army into Russia. At first he gained great victories, and entered Moscow as a conqueror. But on his way home his army suffered so terribly from the frightful cold of a Russian winter that the greater part of it perished. Then the princes of Europe took courage. Once more they allied together against Napoleon. The Allies gained several great victories, and at last even Paris opened its gates to them. Wellington heard the news at Toulouse, and heard that the French had taken as their king Lewis XVIII., the brother of the king who had been executed in the time of the Revolution. Napoleon was sent away to the little Island of Elba, off the west coast of Italy.

Wellington went first to Paris, and then back to England. He was greeted at Dover with wild delight, and carried through the streets on the shoulders of the

shouting crowd. In London the horses were taken out of his carriage, and it was dragged in triumph



THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON.

to his house, where he was carried from the carriage into the hall.

**The battle of Waterloo, 1815.**—The Allies sent ambassadors to Vienna to settle the affairs of Europe. One evening, eleven months after Lewis XVIII. became king, the news suddenly arrived at a grand ball at Vienna that Napoleon had escaped from Elba. He landed in France, and going at once to the army, said to the soldiers, "Here is your Emperor, if any one would kill him let them fire." They greeted him with tears of joy, and as he marched to Paris he was welcomed gladly everywhere. Lewis XVIII. fled, and Napoleon entered Paris in triumph. The Allies hastened to get ready for war again. Wellington went to Belgium to get an army together, and a great Prussian army under Blucher marched to join him.

Napoleon was very busy in getting ready to meet them, and left Paris full of hope with his army. "I go," he said, "to measure myself with Wellington."

Wellington had posted his army round Brussels, and the town was full of English officers and their ladies. Every one was gay, and they spent the days in dinners, and balls, and all kinds of amusements. On the 15th June there was a grand ball, at which Wellington was the gayest of the gay. But he and a few others knew that by this time the French were near. After midnight he and his officers slipped away from the ballroom and rode to join their troops.

The next day the fighting began. The Prussian troops under Blucher were some way from Wellington and his troops, and Napoleon wanted to prevent them



from joining. He attacked Blucher himself, and hoped to defeat him first, and sent some of his troops to do what harm they could to Wellington meanwhile. Napoleon defeated the Prussians, but left them still able to fight, whilst Wellington drove back the French. The next day Wellington marched his troops a little way back to a village called Waterloo, to protect Brussels better. Blucher sent word that he would soon be able to come and help him with his whole army.

The next night was wet and stormy, and on the morning of Sunday the 18th June the ground was so muddy that it was difficult to get about. Wellington put all his army in order, and rode everywhere to see himself that all was right. When Napoleon saw the English army spread out before him he cried out, "At last I have them!" He watched the beginning of the battle from a hill, with a table before him covered with maps. With his telescope he could see in the far distance the Prussians coming to help Wellington. Before they came the English must be driven to flight. So again and again the splendid French horsemen were bidden to charge the English. But Wellington knew that his men must be made to stand firm till the Prussians came. The terrible fire of the French swept through them, killing immense numbers, but the rest knew their duty and stood firm. Wellington rode about amongst them with cheering words, "Stand firm, my lads!" he said, "what will they say of this in England?" To the officers he said, "You must hold your ground to the last man, and all will be well."



When Napoleon saw how firm they stood, he said, "I could never have believed that the English had such fine troops." At last Wellington knew that the Prussians were close at hand, and just as the sun was setting he dared at last to lead his troops to attack the French. One of his officers begged him to take more care of himself. "Let them fire away," he answered; "the battle's won, and my life is of no consequence now." Prussians and English attacked at the same time, and the whole French army fled before them. Blucher met Wellington on the battle-field and hugged him in his joy. The English soldiers were too tired out to follow the French, and left that to the Prussians, who chased the French till far into the night. Wellington rode back in the moonlight over the battle-field, and the wounded raised themselves to cheer him as he passed.

A terrible number of men were killed in the battle. Wellington wrote, "My heart is broken by the terrible loss I have sustained in my old friends and companions and my poor soldiers." But the battle of Waterloo ended the war. The Allies marched into Paris in triumph, and Lewis XVIII. came back. Napoleon, who had fled from the battle-field, gave himself up to the English. He was sent a prisoner to a little rocky island called St. Helena, off the coast of Africa, where he died five years afterwards.

**Discontent in England.**—During the last years people in England had been so busy with the war that they had had no time to think much of things at home. Now that there was peace people began to find fault

with the Government and to wish for changes. The ministers were Tories ; they wished to keep things as they were, and not to let the people make the changes they wanted, so they were not at all liked. George III., who was an old man, had become mad, so that he could no longer govern himself. Several times in his life he had already had fits of madness and had got better from them, but now there seemed no chance of his getting better. His eldest son George was made Prince Regent, and governed instead of his father.

George III. had not always been a wise king, but he had been a good man, and his wife, Queen Charlotte, was a good woman, and was loved by the people. They had a very large family, thirteen children ; but their sons were idle men who only cared for pleasure and spending money, so that the people grumbled at the extravagance of the royal family. The Prince Regent had led a bad life and quarrelled with his wife, and no one respected him, so this made people dislike the government of which he was the head. There was a great deal of trouble in the land, for food was dear and wages were low, whilst the taxes were very heavy. In many parts of the country there were riots ; the people in their distress and poverty rose against their richer neighbours, and tried to get the bread they needed by violence. It seemed clear that there were changes needed, but the Tory government would not make them. Whilst things were in this disturbed state the old king, George III., died at the age of eighty-two.

**George IV. becomes king, 1820.**—At his father's death the Prince Regent became king as George IV.; this made no change, for he had for many years been the ruler of the kingdom. He was a vain, foolish man, who loved fine clothes and amusement, and wasted immense sums of money on his own pleasures.

George IV.'s ministry was so much hated that a plot was made to kill all the ministers whilst they were together at dinner; but it was found out in time. The ministers stayed quietly each in his own house, and the conspirators were found in a stable, where they were getting ready, and were taken prisoners. After a while some new ministers were chosen who were better liked. The chief of these was Canning, who though a Tory was not against all changes. Under his rule things began to go better. Mr. Huskisson, one of the ministers, did much to help on commerce, and made changes to allow foreign countries to trade more freely with England, and this brought more riches into the land. Canning prevented England from mixing in the quarrels of other lands in Europe, and persuaded people that each land must settle its affairs for itself.

**The Duke of Wellington becomes Prime Minister, 1828.**—Both Whigs and Tories mourned when Canning died, and vast crowds followed his funeral. Soon after his death the Duke of Wellington became Prime Minister. He was not as great as a minister as he had been as a general. He disliked all changes, and he thought that he must rule the country in the same sort of way as he had managed his army.

The Catholics are emancipated, 1829.—Ever since the reign of Charles II. no Catholics and no Protestants who did not belong to the English Church had been allowed to be members of Parliament or to hold any office in the Government. For a long time people had been trying to get these laws changed. Pitt had twice tried to do so, but George III. thought it was wrong to do anything in favour of the Catholics. Now a great many men had joined together to get the laws against the Catholics done away with, and Wellington at last gave way when he saw how much people wished it, especially in Ireland, where there were more Catholics than Protestants. A bill was passed which gave equal rights to Catholics and Protestants. Though Wellington acted rightly towards the Catholics, he did not govern wisely in most things, and there was still much discontent and misery in the country.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

### *MODERN ENGLAND.*

William IV. becomes king, 1830.—George IV. died after he had been king ten years, and no one mourned for him. He left no children, and his brother became king as William IV.

William IV. was sixty-five years old. He was a simple, kindly man, with pleasant manners, which made every one like him. He was friendly both to the Whigs and the Tories, and mixed freely with his subjects.

Liverpool and Manchester Railway opened, 1830.—The same year that William IV. came to the throne the first railway for carrying passengers was opened in England. A man called George Stephenson, who had at first been only an engineforeman at a colliery, had studied for some years to invent a locomotive engine, that is, an engine that could move along and pull weights behind it. He at last succeeded, and made a railway between Stockton and Darlington, where goods were carried by an engine at the rate of eight miles an hour. Next came the wish to make a railway between Liverpool and Manchester. The merchants and manufacturers were very eager for

this, because they wished the cotton that came from America to Liverpool to be taken to Manchester as quickly as possible, and the only way in which it could go was in barges on the canals, and that was very slow.

A bill to allow the railway to be made was brought into Parliament, and one man speaking in favour of it said that the locomotive would be able to go fifteen or even twenty miles an hour. This was treated as absurd nonsense. Some people were bold enough to say that in time there would be railways all over England, and men would travel in them from place to place instead of going by mail-coaches and postchaises ; but people said they were talking such wild nonsense that it was not worth while listening to them.

Permission to make the railway was given. Stephenson and his son Robert worked hard to invent a locomotive that would run well and quickly, and they made one which was called the "Rocket." They also looked after the making of the railway. All went well, and after five years it was ready to be opened. Many of the chief people of England went to see the opening, and travelled in a train along the line. The train stopped at a station and several gentlemen got out on the line to talk together. Mr. Huskisson, who had done so much for the commerce of England, was persuaded to go and talk to the Duke of Wellington, with whom he had had a quarrel. At that moment a cry was heard, "Get in, get in !" another train was coming. Mr. Huskisson lost his presence of mind and fell on



the rail as he tried to get out of the way. The engine went over and crushed his leg, so that he died a few hours afterwards.

This sad accident spoiled the joy over the opening of the first railway, but it was soon seen what a change Stephenson's invention made. Railway after railway was made in England, and by degrees in all other countries, till the ideas that had been treated as idle dreams became more than true, and all over the civilized world passengers and goods are whirled along by locomotive engines. At first it was thought madness to speak of travelling fifteen or twenty miles an hour, now the express trains can go sixty miles an hour. Watt with his steam-engine and Stephenson with his locomotive have made England the busy manufacturing country which it now is.

The Reform Bill is passed, 1832.—When William IV. came to the throne the Duke of Wellington was still Prime Minister, but he was not liked, for he would not do the things which people wanted. For many years there had been a great number of people in England who wished that some change should be made in the way in which members of Parliament were chosen. Many large towns did not send any members to Parliament, whilst small places of no importance sent one or even two members. Besides this only a very small number of people had the right of voting who should be members. Most of the men who were busy with trade and manufacture had no votes. So though Parliament was the chief power in England,

the House of Commons was not really chosen by the people but by the landowners. It was said all over England that there ought to be a reform of Parliament, that is, that the way in which it was chosen must be changed. But the Duke of Wellington said there was no need for reform, and this made men very angry with him. So at last he had to give up being Prime Minister. When the Prime Minister resigns or gives up his office, all the other ministers who make up the Government resign with him, and the new Prime Minister whom the King chooses has to make a new Government. William IV. asked Lord Grey, one of the chief Whigs, who had always spoken in favour of reform, to be Prime Minister. For a long while the Government had always been made up of Tories, now the Whigs got back the power again.

Lord John Russell, one of the new ministers, brought a bill into the House of Commons, called the Reform Bill, which was to make the changes that were most needed in the way in which Parliament was chosen. When his bill was read most people listened in surprise to the great changes which he wished to make, and laughed at his remarks. Outside the House crowds of people were eagerly waiting to hear what happened, and men on horseback were ready to carry the news all over England. Every day as the bill was discussed the excitement both in the House and in the country grew greater. The people who were against it thought the reform would ruin the land, because it would give too much power to the people. On the other hand, many

of the people who were in favour of it thought that it would put an end to all the misery of the land, and bring good days for every one. When the votes of the House of Commons were taken it was found that 302 voted for the bill, and 301 against it; and afterwards, when the House was discussing different parts of the bill, more members voted against what the ministers wanted than voted with them. The question now was whether the ministers should resign, so that new ministers might be chosen who would please the Commons better, or whether the Commons should be dissolved.

William IV. was persuaded to dissolve the Commons, for it seemed as if the great mass of people wished what the ministers wished. When the people heard that Parliament was dissolved they were full of joy. All London was illuminated, and the windows of the Duke of Wellington and others, who would not light up their houses, were broken by the mob.

When the new Parliament met most of the members were in favour of the Reform Bill. It at last passed the House of Commons, and then was taken before the House of Lords. The Lords discussed the question for five nights. Lord Grey spoke earnestly for the bill, the Duke of Wellington and many others against it, and in the end more lords voted against it than for it, so that the bill was lost. Then the whole country was filled with anger against the Lords. In many places there were terrible riots, and men banded themselves

together with vows never to rest till the Reform Bill was passed.

When Parliament met again they quickly passed another Reform Bill, and sent it up to the House of Lords, but still they would not pass it. The ministers wished the King to make a number of new lords who would vote for the bill; but the King would not, and the ministers resigned. Then the King asked Wellington to be Prime Minister again, but Wellington could not get any ministers to work with him. The whole country was in an excitement, and at last the King was obliged to ask Lord Grey to be Prime Minister again. The King himself asked the Lords not to vote again against the Reform Bill, and it was at last passed. William was wise enough to see that he must not go against the will of the country.

The Reform Bill made a great change. The revolution which had placed William and Mary on the throne had made Parliament the first power in the country. The Reform Bill brought about that Parliament should really be chosen by the people. Those who thought that the country would be ruined by it soon found out their mistake. The new voters used their power wisely, changes were made slowly and gradually, and one by one the things which were needed for the good of the country have been done. Since the passing of the Reform Bill the trade and manufactures of England have thriven, and the people have grown more contented. There are still the two parties, Whigs and Tories, in the country, though they are now more

generally called Liberals and Conservatives. Sometimes the country is willing to trust the Government to one party, sometimes to the other. Whether the Government is made up of Liberals or of Conservatives, its one wish is to do what it thinks best for the country. The Conservatives wish to keep things as they are, the Liberals are willing to make any changes which the people want.

**William IV. dies, 1837.**—The years after the passing of the Reform Bill were very busy ones in Parliament, and many things were done for the good of the country. In the year 1837 William IV. died. The people mourned for him, and the chief men of both parties joined in praising him, for his first wish had always been to do what was good for his people.

**Victoria becomes Queen, 1837.**—William IV. left no children. The heir to the throne was his niece Victoria, the child of his brother the Duke of Kent. The Princess Victoria had been brought up most carefully by her mother, the Duchess of Kent. The Duchess felt it to be her first duty rightly to prepare her child for the great post which she would one day have to fill. They lived together very quietly in Kensington Palace, away from all the bustle and the gaiety of the Court. There one morning early Victoria, then only eighteen years old, was awakened to be told that messengers were come from Windsor with the news that the King was dead. Hastily throwing a shawl over her nightdress, she received the Prime Minister, Lord Melbourne, who came to greet her as



his Queen. A few hours afterwards the young Queen had to meet her Council. Pale and calm, she took her seat at the head of the table, and spoke a few simple words, in which she showed her earnest wish to do what was for the good of her people. Every one was charmed with her behaviour, which gave them good hope that she would really be a blessing to her people.

The next day she showed herself dressed simply in black at the window of St. James' Palace to the people, and wept when their shouts of joy filled the air. The hopes which filled men's hearts that day have not been disappointed. She has made herself the head of the people, has felt with them and for them, and has been willing to govern according to their wishes.

When Victoria became Queen of England she did not at the same time become ruler of Hanover, since according to the laws of Hanover no woman could rule in that country. The English were not sorry to lose the tie which bound them to Germany, so that their rulers might no longer be called upon to interfere in German affairs.

**The Penny Post, 1839.**—Since Victoria became Queen many changes have taken place in England which have made the life of the people easier and happier. Railways have spread over every part of the land. By them goods of all kinds are carried from one place to another with little cost. It was found out, too, that steamboats could cross the Atlantic, and this was a great help to the trade with America. Merchants and manufacturers became able to do so much business



that trade has flourished, and the country has grown rich. Soon after Victoria came to the throne, Rowland Hill made a plan for setting up a penny post. Before that time it had cost a shilling, and often more, to send a letter; but members of Parliament were allowed to send letters free of cost. Hill thought that if every one could send a letter for a penny, so many more letters would be sent that the post could be managed with profit to the country. At first people said that his plan was absurd and must fail, but the Government were persuaded to try it. The Penny Post has succeeded so well that now it pays its expenses and makes more than a million pounds profit every year.

**The Queen's marriage, 1840.**—People wished to see the Queen married, and every one was satisfied when she chose as her husband her cousin, Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha. He was a handsome and well-educated prince, with many talents and a fine and noble character. The Queen loved him dearly. He shared her cares and duties, and devoted his life to the good of his adopted country, whilst in his own family he spared no pains to train his children to be good and useful men and women.

**The repeal of the Corn Laws, 1836-1846.**—Queen Victoria's first ministers were Whigs. They seemed to have neither the will nor the power to make the reforms which the people wanted, but they would not for some time give way to others. At last Sir Robert Peel, a Conservative, became Prime Minister. He had long led the party in the House of Commons which

was opposed to the Government. He was a very clever speaker, and knew how to manage money affairs, and his character was such that every one respected him even when they did not agree with him.

The reform that was most wanted at that time was the repeal of the Corn Laws. These laws forbade any corn to be brought into England from other countries unless a large sum of money, called a *duty*, was paid upon it to the State. This made corn very dear, for enough could not be grown in England for the wants of the people, and the poor suffered very much from the great cost of bread. But a great many people thought that if corn became cheap the English farmers would be ruined, and they said that for the good of the farmers the high duty on foreign corn must be paid. When Sir Robert Peel became Prime Minister he said that he did not think it would be wise to do away with the duty on corn. But other people, particularly Mr. Cobden and Mr. Bright, worked hard to get the duty done away with. Mr. Cobden made warm friends with Mr. Bright, and asked him to come with him and never rest till the Corn Laws were repealed. They were both good speakers, and never wearied of holding meetings and making speeches to persuade people how much better it would be to have free trade instead of these duties.

**The Irish famine, 1845-1846.**—A terrible misfortune in Ireland helped to persuade many of the truth of what Cobden and Bright were teaching. Nearly all the Irish working people lived entirely on

potatoes. In the year 1845 the summer was wet and cold, and when people began to dig up their potatoes they found that they had been made uneatable by the disease called the potato-rot. Without their potatoes the Irish peasants must starve, for they had no money to buy other food. The thought of the coming famine made Cobden and Bright and their followers louder than ever in their call for the repeal of the Corn Laws. Some who till now had been in favour of the Corn Laws changed their minds. Chief amongst these was Sir Robert Peel himself. When Parliament met in 1846, he rose immediately after the opening and told the Commons that he had seen that the opinions that he held before were wrong, and that he now meant to do away with the Corn Laws. The country gentlemen who till now had admired and stood by Sir Robert Peel were full of anger. A new speaker, Mr. Disraeli, rose to express their feelings with much violence. But most of the Commons voted with Sir Robert Peel, and the Corn Laws were repealed.

But the repeal of the Corn Laws could not stop the famine in Ireland, for the peasants had no money to buy even cheap corn. Soon the suffering became terrible. Charitable people did all they could to help, but the evil was too great for their efforts to stop it. In every part of Ireland thousands of people died of starvation. The peasants might be met wandering on the roads with hollow eyes and gaunt cheeks in search of food, having left their empty hovels in despair. With the famine came a terrible famine fever of which

many died who had escaped starvation. Altogether a quarter of all the people of Ireland died. The English Government had to send food to the suffering Irish, and so saved them from destruction. In our own day it still is one of the chief difficulties of the Government to know how to improve the state of Ireland.

The Great Exhibition, 1851.—Little by little England grew quieter and more contented. The repeal of the Corn Laws made food cheaper, trade grew, and wages went up. Some began to be filled with hopes that a golden age had begun, when all nations would live in peace and content, and prosperity be seen on every side. Prince Albert, who always tried to help manufacture and art in every way in his power, thought that it would be very useful to have a great exhibition in London of the works of all nations. People eagerly took up the idea, and everything possible was done to make the Exhibition a success. A great building of glass and iron was built in Hyde Park, and hither all the nations of the world sent their works to be exhibited. People from all parts of the world crowded to see the show. To many this meeting of men of all countries seemed like a great peace festival. But though the Exhibition did not bring peace to the world, it was found to be useful in many ways by encouraging industries and bringing people of all nations together. There have been many exhibitions since in London, in Paris, in Vienna, and other places, though none caused the same excitement as the first. The building of iron and glass was taken down

from Hyde Park and put up again on one of the hills of Sydenham, where it still exists as a place of pleasure for the people, and is called the Crystal Palace.

**The Crimean War, 1853-1856.**—The Great Exhibition was hardly over before men saw how vain were their hopes that a reign of peace had begun upon the earth. A quarrel broke out between Russia and Turkey, and to a large number of people in England it seemed necessary that the English should help Turkey against her powerful enemy. It was thought that if Russia conquered the Turks she would become too powerful in the Mediterranean, and might disturb the English trade with India. In France Napoleon III., the nephew of the great Napoleon, had made himself Emperor by many cruel and crafty deeds. He now thought that he could best gain his people's love by making them take part in a glorious war. He urged the English to join him in aiding Turkey against Russia. Many in England grew eager for the excitement of war; but there were still many who clung to peace—some because they hated all wars, others because they thought it wrong to fight in the cause of the uncivilized and heathen Turks. At last it was decided that the English and the French should join together to help the Turks.

**The siege of Sebastopol, 1854-1855.**—England had been for nearly forty years at peace, and it was found that things were not at all in readiness to begin the war. The plan was to attack the coasts of Russia. An English fleet was sent into the Baltic,



and men hoped it would do great things ; but all it did was to put a stop to the Russian trade for the time. A large body of French and English troops were sent to the Black Sea, and they landed on the peninsula of the Crimea to attack a great fort which the Russians had built there, called Sebastopol.

After the allied French and English landed in the Crimea, they marched towards Sebastopol without at first being troubled by the Russians. But when they came to the river Alma, they saw the Russian army posted on the other side. A terrible fight took place ; and at last the Allies drove the Russians back, though they were too tired to follow them. The next day the Allies marched on, and prepared to besiege Sebastopol from the south.

**The charge of the Light Brigade.**—The English were posted at Balaclava, on the sea-shore, and their ships were easily able to bring them the supplies they needed. A great Russian army marched to attack them, hoping to drive them from this position near their ships ; but the English stood firm, and drove back their enemy. During this fight, by mistake, an order was brought to a small body of English cavalry, called the Light Brigade, to charge the Russian army. The officers of the Light Brigade felt sure there must be some mistake, but they knew that it is the first duty of a soldier to obey, and they charged. Six hundred and seven men rode at the enemy's cannons, ready to meet a certain death, and only 198 came back alive.





SEBASTOPOL.

**The capture of Sebastopol.**—During a severe winter the allied troops lay outside Sebastopol. The men who looked after the affairs of the army in England managed very badly. The soldiers had neither the food nor the clothing they needed, and their hospitals were very bad, so that during the winter cold the English army suffered terribly. When people at home heard of these sufferings they grew very angry with the Government for managing so badly. So the Government resigned, and Lord Palmerston was made Prime Minister instead of Lord Aberdeen. Pity for the sufferings of the soldiers led people to subscribe large sums of money to help the sick and wounded.

Outside Sebastopol there was constant fighting. The Allies tried hard to gain some of the chief Russian fortifications. At last, when the siege had lasted nearly a year, a great attack was made. The French, like cats, climbed the hill of Malakoff; they chased the Russians from their post, and planted the French flag on the top of the hill, and the Russians could not succeed in tearing it down again. The same day the English too fought bravely, but with less success. That night the Russians determined to leave Sebastopol. The Allies entered the town next morning, and found it almost destroyed by the terrible way in which it had been bombarded. Their first work was to destroy all the docks and forts which had been built there, so that Sebastopol might never again shelter a Russian fleet.

**The Peace of Paris, 1856.**—The capture of Sebastopol brought the war to an end, and soon after peace was agreed upon at Paris. The war had cost England many lives and much money, and did little good in the long run; for the disagreement in the East between Turkey and Russia still goes on, and threatens the peace of Europe.

**The Indian Mutiny, 1857, 1858.**—The year after peace was made new troubles came upon England. The native soldiers in India rebelled against the English. The number of the rebels was large, and there were few English soldiers at hand to put them down, so the natives were able to lay siege to several towns. They treated the English men and women whom they caught with frightful cruelty. At Cawnpore the women and children were tortured and cut to pieces, and their mangled bodies were thrown into a well. Another town where there were many English, Lucknow, was closely beset by the rebels. General Havelock was sent with such English soldiers as could be got together to save Lucknow. In twelve battles he defeated much larger armies of natives, and got safely to Lucknow. But though he brought help and comfort to the unhappy people in the town, he was not strong enough to drive back the rebels. The siege lasted nearly three months longer, when Sir Colin Campbell was able to bring more soldiers to Lucknow. Even then the English did not dare to risk a battle. Sir Colin Campbell, before the rebels knew what he was doing, quietly took all the English men and

women away to a place of safety. When the women were safe he could think of fighting once more, and every English soldier longed to punish the rebels for the cruel deeds they had done. By degrees the mutiny was put down, and a fierce revenge was taken upon the rebels.

The danger in which all India had been because of this mutiny made the English Government see that they must look better after Indian affairs. After this the government of India was no longer left to the East India Company, but was cared for by the Queen's ministers, and great care is taken to govern this great country well and wisely.

**Death of Prince Albert.**—In 1861 the Queen's husband, Prince Albert, died. He was a great loss both to the Queen and to the country, for besides being a loving husband and father, he worked hard for the good of England, and it was only after his death that men found out how much they owed him.

**Conclusion.**—It would be impossible to tell you all the many things that have been done in England or done by the English in other lands during the last thirty years. On the whole our country has prospered greatly, but it depends upon each one of us whether she shall prosper in the future. We must study well the history of the past, that we may remember how it is that England has become such a great country. Whilst we should never weary of trying to make our country greater and better, we must

reverence the work that our forefathers have done, and learn from them the courage, the devotion, and the industry which have made England great.





## INDEX.

- Aberdeen, Lord, 380  
 Addington, 347, 349  
 Agricola, Caius Tullius, 9  
 Aidan, 25  
 Albanus, St., 12  
 Albert, Prince, of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, 373, 376, 381  
 Alexander III., King of Scotland, 115  
 Alfred, King, 35-39  
 America, war in, 334, 335  
 Angevin kings, the, 81  
 Angles, the, 15, 19, 20  
 Anjou, Geoffrey of, 78  
 Anne of Bohemia, 147  
 Anne of Cleves, 199  
 Anne, Princess, of Denmark, 285  
 Anne, Queen, 303-314  
 Anne Boleyn, 188, 190, 192, 193  
 Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, 72, 75  
 Arcot, 330  
 Armada, the Spanish, 224-226  
 Athelney, 36  
 Augustine, 20-22  
  
 Baliol, Edward, 124  
 Baliol, John, 115, 116  
 Bamborough, 26  
 Barons, the, rise against John, 101  
 Barons' war, the, 105, 106  
 Battles—  
     Agincourt, 152  
     Bannockburn, 120  
     Barnet, 167  
     Blenheim, 306-308  
     Battles—*continued.*  
         Bosworth, 173  
         Bouvines, 101  
         Boyne, 295, 296  
         Bunker's Hill, 334  
         Cressy, 129-132  
         Dettingen, 322  
         Evesham, 108  
         Flodden, 183  
         Hastings, 57-60  
         Killiecrankie, 297  
         La Hogue, 300  
         Lewes, 106  
         Marston Moor, 258  
         Naseby, 260  
         Nevil's Cross, 132  
         Nile, 346, 347  
         Northampton, 164  
         Plassy, 332  
         Poitiers, 136, 137  
         Ramillies, 308  
         Sedgemoor, 280  
         Tewkesbury, 167  
         Towton, 165  
         Trafalgar, 350  
         Vittoria, 356  
         Waterloo, 359  
         Worcester, 266  
     Beachy Head, 299  
     Beauvais, the Bishop of, 157  
     Becket, Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, 84-88  
     Bede, 31, 32  
     Bedford, Duke of, uncle of Henry VI., 154, 159  
     Bengal, 337  
     Berkeley Castle, 121

- Bertha, Queen of Kent, 20  
 Berwick, 115, 116  
 Bishops, trial of the seven, 282-284  
 Black Death, the, 134 135  
 Black Hole, the, of Calcutta, 331  
 Blenheim Palace, 308  
 Blucher, General, 359-361  
 Boadicea, 8, 9  
 Boleyn, Anne, 198  
 Bombay, 329  
 Bothwell, Earl of, 218  
 Bright, Mr., 375  
 Britain, conquered by the Romans, 7-9  
 Britons, the, 4-7, 12, 17-19  
 Brittany, Arthur of, 97  
 Bruce, David, 124  
 Bruce, Robert, 117-120  
 Buckingham, George Villiers, Duke of, 243, 244, 246-248  
 Bunyan, John, 274  
 Buonaparte, Napoleon, 344, 349, 355, 357, 359, 361  
 Burke, Edmund, 335, 339, 340, 343  
 Burleigh, Lord, 211, 214, 234  
 Bute, Earl of, 333  
  
 Cabinet Council, the, 292  
 Cabot, John, 181  
 Cabot, Sebastian, 181  
 Cadiz, 224  
 Cædmon, 28  
 Caen, 69  
 Caernarvon Castle, 111  
 Cæsar, Caius Julius, 4-7  
 Calais, 132, 134, 153, 160, 208-210  
 Calcutta, 330, 331  
 Campbell, Sir Colin, 381  
 Campeggio, Cardinal, 190  
 Canada, 337  
 Canning, Mr., 363  
 Canterbury, 60, 88  
 Canute, 47-49  
  
 Caractacus, 8  
 Carisbrooke Castle, 261  
 Caroline, Queen, 319  
 Catholic Emancipation, 364  
 Cavaliers, 256  
 Cawnpore, 381  
 Caxton, William, 169  
 Cecil, Robert, 234, 237  
 Charles I., 245-254, 256, 258, 260-265  
 Charles II., 265, 266, 270-279  
 Charles, Prince, 243, 244  
 Charles Edward, the Young Pretender, 323, 325  
 Charles the Great, 32, 34  
 Charles V., the Emperor, 185, 187, 189, 205, 208,  
 Charles V., King of France, 138, 139  
 Charles VI., King of France, 153  
 Charles VII., King of France, 157  
 Charles, the Dauphin, 154, 156  
 Charlotte, Queen, 362  
 Chatham, Earl of, 333, 335, 336, 338  
 Chaucer, Geoffrey, 142  
 Chester, 43  
 Christians, the early, 11, 12  
 Civil War, the, 256  
 Clarence, Duke of, 168  
 Clive, Robert, 330-332, 337  
 Cobden, Mr., 375  
 Coifi, 23  
 Columba, 25  
 Columbus, Christopher, 174  
 Commons, the House of, 140, 291, 292  
 Commonwealth, the, 265  
 Company, the East India, 329, 330, 382  
 Conservatives, 371  
 Constantine, 13  
 Cope, General, 323  
 Corn Laws, repeal of the, 374, 375  
 Cornwall, 18

- Council, the Great, 76  
 Cranmer, Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, 192, 196, 201, 204, 207  
 Crimean war, the, 377  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 257-262, 265-269  
 Cromwell, Richard, 270  
 Cromwell, Thomas, 196-199  
 Crusades, the, 71, 94, 95  
 Cumberland, Duke of, 324, 325  
 Cuthbert, St., 27, 30  
  
 Danes, the, 36-40, 44-46  
 Darnley, Lord, 217, 218  
 Declaration of Rights, the, 289, 290  
 Dermot, 91  
 Dissenters, the, 271  
 Domremy, 155  
 Drake, Francis, 221, 224  
 Dublin, 92, 296  
 Dundee, James Claverhouse, Viscount, 297  
 Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury, 41-43, 45  
 Dupleix, governor of Pondicherry, 330  
 Durham, Minster of, 30  
  
 Edgar, King, 42, 44  
 Edgar, the Atheling, 60  
 Edmund, King, 41  
 Edmund Ironside, King, 47  
 Edred, King, 42  
 Edward the Elder, King, 39, 40  
 Edward the Confessor, King, 50, 51, 54  
 Edward I., 110-118  
 Edward II., 118-121  
 Edward III., 123-142  
 Edward IV., 164-169  
 Edward V., 169-171  
 Edward VI., 200, 203  
 Edward, Prince, 106, 108  
 Edward, the Black Prince, 127, 131, 136, 139  
  
 Edwin, King of Northumbria, 22-24  
 Edwy, King, 42  
 Egbert, King of Wessex, 34  
 Egfrith, 30  
 Elba, 359  
 Eleanor, Queen of Henry II., 80, 94, 97  
 Eleanor, Queen of Edward I., 109  
 Eliot, Sir John, 247, 248  
 Elizabeth, Queen, 198, 204-206, 209-216, 219-234  
 Elizabeth Woodville, 166  
 Elizabeth of York, 172, 176  
 Emma, Queen, 48, 49  
 English, the coming of, 17-19  
 English Kingdoms, the, 19  
 Essex, the Earl of, 232-234  
 Ethelbert, King of Kent, 20, 21  
 Ethelburg, Queen of Wessex, 30, 31  
 Ethelfled, the Lady of Mercia, 39  
 Ethelred the Unready, 45  
 Ethelstan, King, 40, 41  
 Ethelwolf, King, 35  
 Eugene, Prince, 306  
 Exchequer Court, the, 76  
 Exeter, 286  
 Exhibition, the Great, 376  
  
 Fairfax, 259, 261, 262  
 "Fairy Queen," the, 231  
 Falkirk, battle of, 117  
 Famine, the Irish, 374-376  
 Farne Islands, the, 27, 30  
 Fawkes, Guy, 239  
 Felton, 248  
 Field of the Cloth of Gold, the, 186  
 Fire in London, 271  
 Fisher, Bishop, 197  
 Flemish weavers, the, 141  
 Fotheringay Castle, 223  
 Fox, Charles, 341, 353  
 France conquered by Henry V., 153

- Francis I., King of France, 185,  
186, 189
- Gascony, 136, 139
- Geoffrey, Count of Anjou, 81
- George I., 315, 316, 318, 319
- George II., 319-326, 332
- George III., 332-334, 340, 341,  
353, 362
- George IV., 363, 365
- George, Prince of Denmark,  
285, 303
- Germaines, St., 289
- German peoples, the, 14-16
- Gibraltar, 309, 336
- Glencoe, the Massacre of, 298
- Gloucester, Duke of, uncle of  
Richard II., 147, 148
- Gloucester, Duke of, uncle of  
Henry VI., 154, 163
- Gloucester, Duke of, 263
- Godolphin, Lord, 305, 311
- Godwin, Earl of Wessex, 49-53
- Gorm, King of the Danes, 37
- Grand Alliance, the, 299, 302,  
305
- Great Britain, 312
- Great Charter, the, 102, 104, 113
- Gregory, Pope, 20
- Grey, Lady Jane, 203, 205, 206
- Grey, Lord, 368-370
- Guienne, 160
- Gunpowder Plot, the, 239
- Hampden, John, 252, 253
- Hampton Court, 261, 303
- Hanover, house of, 314
- Harley, Robert, 312, 313
- Harold Harefoot, King, 49
- Harold, Earl, 53
- Harold, King, 54, 56-60
- Harthacnut, King, 46, 50
- Hastings, Earl of, 170
- Hastings, Warren, 338, 339
- Havelock, General, 381
- Hengist, 17
- Henrietta Maria, Queen, 244, 246
- Henry I., 73-78
- Henry II., 81, 83-94
- Henry III., 103-109
- Henry IV., 149-151
- Henry V., 151-154
- Henry VI., 154, 159-168
- Henry VII., 172, 176-182
- Henry VIII., 182-200
- Hereford, Duke of, 148,  
149
- Hereford, Castle of, 108
- Hexham, 165
- Highlanders, the, 297
- Hild, the Abbess, 28
- Hill, Rowland, 373
- Holyrood Palace, 217
- Homage, 66
- Horsa, 17
- Howard, Catherine, 199
- Howard, Lord Charles, 225
- Hubert de Burgh, 104
- Huskisson, Mr., 363
- Independents, the, 257, 260
- Indulgence, the Declaration of,  
282
- Ini, King of Wessex, 30, 31
- Innocent III., Pope, 98, 99
- Iona, 25, 29
- Ireland, 232, 233, 265, 348
- Ireland conquered by Henry II.,  
91, 92
- Ironsides, the, 258
- Isabella, Queen, 121-124
- Isabella, Queen of Richard II.,  
147
- Jacobites, the, 299
- James I., birth of, 218, 234,  
237-245
- James II., 279-287, 289, 294,  
296, 299, 300
- James IV., King of Scotland,  
179, 180, 183
- James, Duke of York, 276, 277,  
288
- Jarrow, 31

- Jeffries, Chief-Justice, 281, 288  
 Jenkins, Captain, 320  
 Jennings, Sarah, 303, 304  
 Joan Darc, 155-159  
 John, King, 96-103  
 John, King of France, 136-138  
 John, Prince, 92, 93, 95  
 John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, 139, 140, 144, 145, 147, 148  
 Jonson, Ben, 229  
 Joseph, King of Spain, 356  
 Jutes, 19  
 Juxon, Bishop, 263  
  
 Katharine of Aragon, 180, 181, 185, 188, 189  
 Kent, the Duchess of, 371  
 Keymis, 241  
  
 Lancastrians, the, 164  
 Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury, 67, 70-72  
 Langton, Stephen, Archbishop of Canterbury, 99, 101  
 Latimer, Bishop, 207  
 Laud, Archbishop, 249, 250  
 Leicester, the Earl of, 226, 227  
 Leicester, 191  
 Leofric, Earl of Mercia, 49  
 Lewellyn, King of Wales, 111  
 Lewis XIV., King of France, 275, 276, 286, 289, 294, 299, 300, 302, 305  
 Lewis XVIII., King of France, 357, 313, 314  
 Liberals, the, 371  
 Light Brigade, charge of the, 378  
 Lindisfarne, 26, 27, 30  
 Liofa, 42  
 Lisle, Lady Alice, 281  
 Liverpool, 342  
 Lochleven Castle, 219  
 Lollards, the, 143, 144  
 London, 10, 11, 18, 38, 271, 272  
 Londonderry, siege of, 294, 295  
  
 Longchamp, William, 94, 95  
 Lords, House of, 291, 292  
 Lucknow, 381  
  
 Macdonald, Flora, 325  
 Mackay, General, 297  
 Madras, 329  
 Malakoff, 380  
 Malcolm, King of Scotland, 74  
 Malfosse, 59  
 Manchester, 342  
 Manufacture in England, growth of, 141, 342  
 Mar, Earl of, 317  
 Margaret of Anjou, 159, 161-168  
 Marlborough, John Churchill, Duke of, 304-314  
 Marlborough, Duchess of, 311, 312  
 Marlowe, Christopher, 229  
 Mary, Queen, 202, 210, 289  
 Mary, Queen, 300, 301  
 Mary, Queen of Scots, 213-219, 222-224  
 Mary, Princess of Orange, 285  
 Mary of Guise, 214, 215  
 Masham, Mrs., 311, 312  
 Matilda, Queen, 67, 69  
 Matilda, the Empress, 78-80  
 Maude, the Good Queen, 74  
 Melbourne, Lord, 371  
 Melrose, 27  
 Mercia, 24, 30, 32  
 Milton, John, 274  
 Ministers, the, 292  
 Monasteries, suppression of the, 197  
 Monk, General, 270  
 Monmouth, Duke of, 279-281  
 Montcalm, General, 327  
 Montfort, Simon de, Earl of Leicester, 105-109  
 More, Sir Thomas, 196, 197  
 Mortimer, Roger, 121  
 Morton, Archbishop, 178  
 Murray, the Regent, 219  
 Mutiny, the Indian, 381

- Napoleon III., Emperor of the French, 377  
 Nelson, Lord, 345-347, 350, 352  
 Netherlands, the, 208, 214, 220  
 Newfoundland, 181  
 Norfolk, Earl of, 148  
 Norman Barons, the, 65  
 Norman Conquest, the, 62  
 Normandy, loss of, 97, 159  
 Normans, the, 91  
 Northmen, the, 34, 35, 40, 41  
 Northumberland, rising in, 64, 65  
 Northumberland, Duke of, 202, 203  
 Norwich, 220  
  
 Oates, Titus, 277  
 Offa, King of Mercia, 32  
 Orinoco, the, 240  
 Orleans, siege of, 156  
 Oswald, King of Northumbria, 25, 26  
 Oxford, Earl of, fined by Henry VII., 179  
 Oxford, Earl of, 313  
 Oxford, 79, 194, 207  
  
 Palmerston, Lord, 380  
 "Paradise Lost," 274  
 Paris, the Peace of, 381  
 Parliament, the Long, 251, 267, 268  
 Parliament, the Good, 140  
 Parliament, the, 105, 107, 113, 114, 290-293  
 Peasants' revolt, the, 144-146  
 Pedro, King of Castile, 139  
 Peel, Sir Robert, 373-375  
 Pelican, the, 221  
 Pembroke, William, Earl of, 103, 104  
 Penda, King of Mercia, 24, 26  
 Peninsular War, the, 356  
 Penny Post, the, 372  
  
 Philip II., of France, 97, 100, 213, 214, 220-222, 224  
 Philip VI. of France, 125, 126, 129, 131  
 Philip II. of Spain, 205, 206, 208  
 Philip IV., King of Spain, 243, 244  
 Philippa, Queen, 135  
 "Pilgrim's Progress," 274  
 Pitt, William, 325, 326, 329, 333, 340, 341, 343, 344, 347, 349, 352-354  
 Plague, the, in London, 271  
 Plantagenets, the, 81  
 Pondicherry, 330, 332  
 Potato, the, introduced into England, 222  
 Presbyterians, the, 257, 260  
 Pretender, the, 285, 314, 316, 317  
 Pride, Colonel, 262  
 Prime Minister, the, 292  
 Prince Regent, the, 362  
 Printing, the invention of, 169  
 Privy Council, the, 293  
 Protestants, the, 194, 198, 201, 206-208  
 Puritans, the, 238, 248, 250, 256, 271, 273, 274  
  
 Quebec, capture of, 326, 327  
  
 Railway, the first, 365-367  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 222, 240, 241  
 Reformation, the, 193  
 Reform Bill, the, 367-371  
 Remonstrance, the Grand, 253  
 Revolution, the, 289  
 Revolution, the French, 343, 344  
 Rheims, 157  
 Richard I., 94-96  
 Richard II., 143-149  
 Richard III., 169-172  
 Richard, Earl of Cornwall, 105, 106

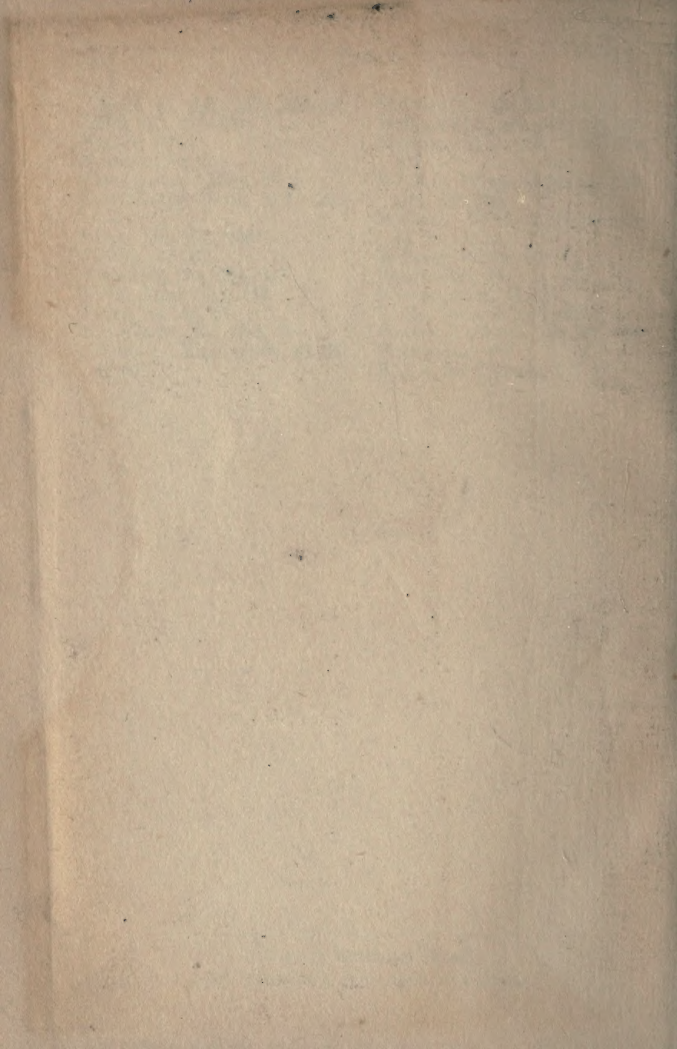


Ridley, Bishop, 207  
 Rivers, Earl of, 169  
 Rizzio, David, 217  
 Robert of Normandy, 67, 69, 71, 73, 75  
 Rochester, 289  
 Romans, the, 3-7  
 Roman Wall, the, 10, 11  
 Roman rule in Britain, the, 9-13  
 Rome, 8  
 Rooke, Sir George, 309  
 Roses, Wars of the, 163-173  
 Rouen, 158  
 Roundheads, the, 256  
 Runnymede, 102  
 Rupert, Prince, 258  
 Ruthven, Lord, 217  
 Russell, Lord John, 368  
 Ryehouse Plot, the, 279  
  
 Saxons, 19  
 Scots, the, 17  
 Sebastopol, siege of, 378, 380  
 Senlac, 57  
 Seymour, Jane, 196  
 Shakespeare, William, 229  
 Shrewsbury, Earl of, 223, 315  
 Sidney, Sir Philip, 229, 231  
 Simnel, Lambert, 176  
 Slave trade, the, 353-355  
 Sluys, battle of, 127  
 Somers, Lord, 301  
 Somerset House, 201  
 Somerset, Duke of, 201, 202  
 Spain, 139  
 Spanish marriage, the, 244  
 Spenser, Edmund, 231  
 St. Helena, 361  
 St. James' Park, 237, 264  
 St. James' Palace, 372  
 St. Paul's, 272, 273  
 St. Pierre, Eustace de, 135  
 Stafford, Lord, 278  
 Stanhope, Lord, 317, 318  
 Star Chamber, Court of the, 179, 250

Steam-engine, the, 341  
 Stephen, 78-81  
 Stephenson, George, 365-367  
 Strafford, Lord, 249, 251, 252  
 Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke, 92  
 Suetonius, 9  
 Surajah Dowlah, 331  
 Surrey, Earl of, 183  
 Sweyn, King of the Danes, 46, 47  
  
 Theodore, 29  
 Tobacco introduced into England, 222  
 Toulouse, 357  
 Torbay, 286  
 Tories, the, 278  
 Tower, the, 171, 176, 203, 240  
 Trade in England, 141  
 Tyler, Wat, 144, 146  
 Tyrone, Earl of, 232  
 Tyrrel, Walter, 171  
  
 Union between England and Ireland, 348  
 Union of England and Scotland, 311  
 United States, the, 337  
 Utrecht, Peace of, 313, 314  
  
 Vassal, the duties of, 66  
 Victoria, Queen, 371-373, 382  
 Virginia, 222  
  
 Wales, 18, 19  
 Wales, conquest of, 110-112  
 Wales, first Prince of, 112  
 Wallace, William, 116, 117  
 Walpole, Robert, 318, 320  
 Walter, Hubert, 95, 96, 98  
 Warbeck, Perkin, 179  
 Warwick, Earl of, the King-maker, 166  
 Washington, George, 334  
 Watling Street, 38  
 Watt, James, 341  
 Wellington, Arthur Wellesley,

- Duke of, 356, 357, 359-361,  
 363, 364, 366-370  
 Wessex, 30  
 Westminster, 256  
 Westminster Abbey, 60  
 Westminster Hall, 251, 283,  
 339  
 Whigs, the, 278, 286  
 Whitby, 28-30  
 Whitehall, 254, 264, 287  
 Wiclif, John, 142, 143  
 Wight, Isle of, 261  
 Wilberforce, Mr., 354, 355  
 William I., King 60-62, 64, 65,  
 67-70  
 William II., the Red, 70-73  
 William III., 289, 293, 295-303  
 William IV., 365, 368, 370,  
 371  
 William, Prince of Orange, 276,  
 285, 286, 289  
 William, Duke of Normandy,  
 51, 54, 56-59  
 William, Prince, 77  
 Winchester, 60  
 Witenagemot, 44, 76  
 Wolfe, General, 326, 327  
 Wolsey, Cardinal, 183-192, 196  
 Woodstock, 308  
 Wyatt, Sir Thomas, 207





50537

HE

C9145f

Author Creighton, Louise

Title First history of England.

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
LIBRARY

Do not  
remove  
the card  
from this  
Pocket.

Acme Library Card Pocket  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File."  
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU



